Oracle® Bills of Material
User’s Guide

Release 11

March 1998
Oracle Bills of Material
Release 11

The part number for this volume is A57335–01.

Copyright © 1998, Oracle Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Major Contributors: Bryan Dobson
Contributors: Kurt Thompson, Michelle Jacobsen, Girish Divate, Julie Maeyama, Rob Yee, Raju Ganapathiraju, Dana Lieberman

The programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information of Oracle Corporation; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent and other intellectual property law. Reverse engineering of the Programs is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error–free. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Oracle Corporation.

Restricted Rights Legend
Programs delivered subject to the DOD FAR Supplement are 'commercial computer software' and use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement. Otherwise, Programs delivered subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations are 'restricted computer software' and use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the restrictions in FAR 52.227–14, Rights in Data — General, including Alternate III (June 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be licensee’s responsibility to take all appropriate fail–safe, back–up, redundancy and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and Oracle disclaims liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

Oracle is a registered trademark and Oracle8, Oracle Application Object Library, Oracle Alert, Oracle Financials, Oracle Quality, Oracle Workflow, Oracle Work in Process, SQL*Forms, SQL*Plus, SQL*AMX, SQL*Report, and SQL*ReportWriter are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation

All other company or product names are mentioned for identification purposes only, and may be trademarks of their respective owners.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 1</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Up</td>
<td>1–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Setting Up</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Workday Calendar</td>
<td>1–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills of Material Profile Options</td>
<td>1–33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills of Material</td>
<td>2–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Bills of Material</td>
<td>2–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Bill of Material</td>
<td>2–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass Changing Bills of Material</td>
<td>2–23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing an Indented Bill of Material</td>
<td>2–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparing Bills of Material</td>
<td>2–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Item Usage</td>
<td>2–32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills of Material Field Reference</td>
<td>2–34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill / Component Validation Rules</td>
<td>2–42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Product Family</td>
<td>2–45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chapter 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow Manufacturing</td>
<td>3–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Flow Manufacturing</td>
<td>3–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Flow Manufacturing Procedures</td>
<td>3–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Flow Manufacturing Standard Processes</td>
<td>3–8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Oracle Bills of Material User's Guide

## Chapter 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Defining Flow Manufacturing Standard Events</td>
<td>3 – 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Flow Routing</td>
<td>3 – 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed Model Map</td>
<td>3 – 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defining Flow Manufacturing Line Operations</td>
<td>3 – 29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 4

**Routings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Routings</td>
<td>4 – 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Routing</td>
<td>4 – 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a Standard Operation</td>
<td>4 – 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Resource Usage</td>
<td>4 – 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routings Field Reference</td>
<td>4 – 20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 5

**Deleting Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations</td>
<td>5 – 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deletion Constraints</td>
<td>5 – 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 6

**Configure to Order**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Configure To Order</td>
<td>6 – 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Model and Option Class Bills of Material</td>
<td>6 – 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forecast Model / Option Demand</td>
<td>6 – 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master Schedule Models and Options</td>
<td>6 – 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales Order Entry</td>
<td>6 – 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP Check</td>
<td>6 – 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoCreate Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders</td>
<td>6 – 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Assembly Order Completion</td>
<td>6 – 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pick Release and Ship Configuration Orders</td>
<td>6 – 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deactivating Configuration Items</td>
<td>6 – 51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 7

**Manufacturing Scheduling**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview of Manufacturing Scheduling</td>
<td>7 – 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed Scheduling</td>
<td>7 – 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetitive Line Scheduling</td>
<td>7 – 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting</td>
<td>7 – 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required Lead Time Information</td>
<td>7 – 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead Time Offsetting Computations</td>
<td>7 – 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 8</td>
<td>Manufacturing Lead Times ........................................... 8 – 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 9</td>
<td>Reports ................................................................. 9 – 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A</td>
<td>Oracle Bills of Material Windows and Navigator Paths .... A – 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B</td>
<td>Oracle Bills of Material Special Menu ................. B – 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overview of Lead Time Management ................................................. 8 – 2
Calculating Lead Times ................................................................. 8 – 17
Bill of Material Comparison Report ................................................. 9 – 2
Bill of Material Listing ................................................................. 9 – 3
Bill of Material Loop Report .......................................................... 9 – 5
Bill of Material Structure Report ...................................................... 9 – 7
Bills of Material Parameters Report .................................................. 9 – 11
Consolidated Bill of Material Report .................................................. 9 – 12
Delete Items Report ................................................................. 9 – 15
Department Classes Report ............................................................. 9 – 17
Department Report ................................................................. 9 – 18
Item Where Used Report .............................................................. 9 – 19
Resource Report ................................................................. 9 – 21
Resource Where Used Report .......................................................... 9 – 22
Routing Report ................................................................. 9 – 23
Standard Comments Report ............................................................. 9 – 26
Standard Instructions Report ............................................................. 9 – 27
Standard Operation Report .............................................................. 9 – 28
Workday Exception Sets Report .......................................................... 9 – 29

Appendix A Bills of Material Windows and Navigator Paths ........ A – 2
Appendix B Bills of Material Special Menu ......................... B – 2

Glossary

Index
This user’s guide includes the information you need to work with Oracle Bills of Material effectively. It contains detailed information about the following:

- Overview and reference information
- Specific tasks you can accomplish using Oracle Bills of Material
- Oracle Bills of Material setup
- Oracle Bills of Material functions and features
- Oracle Bills of Material windows
- Oracle Bills of Material reports and processes

This preface explains how this user’s guide is organized and introduces other sources of information that can help you.
About This User’s Guide

This guide contains overviews as well as task and reference information about Oracle Bills of Material. This guide includes the following chapters:

- Chapter 1 describes how to set up Bills of Material.
  **Note:** Implementation information and procedures are contained in this chapter.

- Chapter 2 describes different types of bills of material and explains how to create them.

- Chapter 3 provides information on flow manufacturing procedures and how they are used with Oracle Bills of Material.

- Chapter 4 describes how to create routings and standard operations.

- Chapter 5 explains how to delete item, bill, and routing information.

- Chapter 6 explains how to use configure to order functionality to process orders for unique product configurations while maintaining control of inventory, planning, and cost accounting.

- Chapter 7 describes the three scheduling methods used in Manufacturing Scheduling: detailed scheduling, repetitive line scheduling, and dynamic lead time offsetting.

- Chapter 8 explains how to calculate manufacturing lead times.

- Chapter 9 provides information on running Bills of Material reports.

- The appendices provide you with navigation paths to all windows and special menu options in Bills of Material.
 Audience for This Guide

This guide assumes you have a working knowledge of your business area’s processes and tools. It also assumes you are familiar with Bills of Material. If you have never used Bills of Material, we suggest you attend one or more of the Bills of Material training classes available through World Wide Education. For more information about Bills of Material and Oracle training, see: Other Information Sources.

Do Not Use Database Tools to Modify Oracle Applications Data

Because Oracle Applications tables are interrelated, any change you make using Oracle Applications can update many tables at once. But when you modify Oracle Applications data using anything other than Oracle Applications, you may change a row in one table without making corresponding changes in related tables. If your tables get out of synchronization with each other, you risk retrieving erroneous information and you risk unpredictable results throughout Oracle Applications.

When you use Oracle Applications to modify your data, Oracle Applications automatically checks that your changes are valid. Oracle Applications also keeps track of who changes information. If you enter information into database tables using database tools, you may store invalid information. You also lose the ability to track who has changed your information because SQL*Plus and other database tools do not keep a record of changes.

Consequently, we STRONGLY RECOMMEND that you never use SQL*Plus or any other tool to modify Oracle Applications data unless otherwise instructed.

Other Information Sources

Here are some other ways you can increase your knowledge and understanding of Bills of Material.

Online Documentation

All Oracle Applications documentation is available online on CD–ROM, except for technical reference manuals. There are two online
formats, HyperText Markup Language (HTML) and Adobe Acrobat (PDF).

All user’s guides are available in HTML, Acrobat, and paper. Technical reference manuals are available in paper only. Other documentation is available in Acrobat and paper.

The content of the documentation does not differ from format to format. There may be slight differences due to publication standards, but such differences do not affect content. For example, page numbers and screen shots are not included in HTML.

The HTML documentation is available from all Oracle Applications windows. Each window is programmed to start your web browser and open a specific, context-sensitive section. Once any section of the HTML documentation is open, you can navigate freely throughout all Oracle Applications documentation. The HTML documentation also ships with Oracle Information Navigator (if your national language supports this tool), which enables you to search for words and phrases throughout the documentation set.

Related User’s Guides

Bills of Material shares business and setup information with other Oracle Applications products. Therefore, you may want to refer to other user’s guides when you set up and use Bills of Material.

If you do not have the hardcopy versions of these manuals, you can read them online using the Applications Library icon or Help menu command.

Oracle Applications User’s Guide

This guide explains how to enter data, query, run reports, and navigate using the graphical user interface (GUI) available with this release of Bills of Material (and any other Oracle Applications products). This guide also includes information on setting user profiles, as well as running and reviewing reports and concurrent processes.

You can access this user’s guide online by choosing “Getting Started with Oracle Applications” from any Oracle Applications help file.

Oracle Applications Demonstration User’s Guide

This guide documents the functional storyline and product flows for Global Computers, a fictional manufacturer of personal computers products and services. As well as including product overviews, the
book contains detailed discussions and examples across each of the major product flows. Tables, illustrations, and charts summarize key flows and data elements.

**Oracle Engineering User’s Guide**

This guide enables your engineers to utilize the features of Oracle Engineering to quickly introduce and manage new designs into production. Specifically, this guide details how to quickly and accurately define the resources, materials and processes necessary to implement changes in product design.

**Oracle Inventory User’s Guide**

This guide describes how to define items and item information, perform receiving and inventory transactions, maintain cost control, plan items, perform cycle counting and physical inventories, and set up Oracle Inventory.

**Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User’s Guide**

This guide describes how to anticipate and manage both supply and demand for your items. Using a variety of tools and techniques, you can create forecasts, load these forecasts into master production schedules, and plan your end-items and their component requirements. You can also execute the plan, releasing and rescheduling planning suggestions for discrete jobs and repetitive schedules.

**Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User’s Guide**

This guide describes how to enter sales orders and returns, copy existing sales orders, schedule orders, release orders, plan departures and deliveries, confirm shipments, create price lists and discounts for orders, and create reports.

**Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide**

This guide describes how Oracle Work in Process provides a complete production management system. Specifically this guide describes how discrete, repetitive, assemble-to-order, project, flow, and mixed manufacturing environments are supported.
Reference Manuals

**Oracle Automotive Implementation Manual**
This manual describes the setup and implementation of the Oracle Applications used for the Oracle Automotive solution.

**Oracle Manufacturing, Distribution, Sales and Service Open Interfaces Manual**
This manual contains up–to–date information about integrating with other Oracle Manufacturing applications and with your other systems. This documentation includes open interfaces found in Oracle Manufacturing.

**Oracle Applications Message Reference Manual**
This manual describes all Oracle Applications messages. This manual is available in HTML format on the documentation CD–ROM for Release 11.

**Oracle Project Manufacturing Implementation Manual**
This manual describes the setup steps and implementation for Oracle Project Manufacturing.

**Oracle Self–Service Web Applications Implementation Manual**
This manual describes the setup steps for Oracle Self–Service Web Applications and the Web Applications dictionary.

Installation and System Administration

**Oracle Alert User’s Guide**
This guide explains how to define periodic and event alerts to monitor the status of your Oracle Applications data.

**Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications**
If you use the Multiple Reporting Currencies feature to record transactions in more than one currency, use this manual before implementing Bills of Material. This manual details additional steps
and setup considerations for implementing Bills of Material with this feature.

**Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications**

If you use the Oracle Applications Multiple Organization Support feature to use multiple sets of books for one Bills of Material installation, this guide describes all you need to know about setting up and using Bills of Material with this feature.

**Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard User's Guide**

If you are implementing more than one Oracle product, you can use the Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard to coordinate your setup activities. This guide describes how to use the wizard.

**Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

This guide contains the coding standards followed by the Oracle Applications development staff. It describes the Oracle Application Object Library components needed to implement the Oracle Applications user interface described in the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards*. It also provides information to help you build your custom Developer/2000 forms so that they integrate with Oracle Applications.

**Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide**

This guide provides flexfields planning, setup and reference information for the Bills of Material implementation team, as well as for users responsible for the ongoing maintenance of Oracle Applications product data. This manual also provides information on creating custom reports on flexfields data.

**Oracle Applications Installation Manual for Windows Clients**

This guide provides information you need to successfully install Oracle Financials, Oracle Public Sector Financials, Oracle Manufacturing, or Oracle Human Resources in your specific hardware and operating system software environment.

**Oracle Applications Product Update Notes**

If you are upgrading your Oracle Applications, refer to the product update notes appropriate to your update and product(s) to see
summaries of new features as well as changes to database objects, profile options and seed data added for each new release.

**Oracle Applications Upgrade Preparation Manual**

This guide explains how to prepare your Oracle Applications products for an upgrade. It also contains information on completing the upgrade procedure for each product. Refer to this manual and the *Oracle Applications Installation Manual* when you plan to upgrade your products.

**Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide**

This manual provides planning and reference information for the Bills of Material System Administrator.

**Other Sources**

**Training**

We offer a complete set of formal training courses to help you and your staff master Bills of Material and reach full productivity quickly. We organize these courses into functional learning paths, so you take only those courses appropriate to your job or area of responsibility.

You have a choice of educational environments. You can attend courses offered by Oracle Education Services at any one of our many Education Centers, or you can arrange for our trainers to teach at your facility. In addition, Oracle training professionals can tailor standard courses or develop custom courses to meet your needs. For example, you may want to use your organization structure, terminology, and data as examples in a customized training session delivered at your own facility.

**Support**

From on–site support to central support, our team of experienced professionals provides the help and information you need to keep Bills of Material working for you. This team includes your Technical Representative, Account Manager, and Oracle’s large staff of consultants and support specialists with expertise in your business area, managing an Oracle8 server, and your hardware and software environment.
About Oracle

Oracle Corporation develops and markets an integrated line of software products for database management, applications development, decision support, and office automation, as well as Oracle Applications, an integrated suite of more than 45 software modules for financial management, supply chain management, manufacturing, project systems, human resources and sales and service management.

Oracle products are available for mainframes, minicomputers, personal computers, network computers and personal digital assistants, allowing organizations to integrate different computers, different operating systems, different networks, and even different database management systems, into a single, unified computing and information resource.

Oracle is the world’s leading supplier of software for information management, and the world’s second largest software company. Oracle offers its database, tools, and applications products, along with related consulting, education, and support services, in over 140 countries around the world.

Thank You

Thank you for using Bills of Material and this user’s guide.

We value your comments and feedback. At the end of this guide is a Reader’s Comment Form you can use to explain what you like or dislike about Bills of Material or this user’s guide. Mail your comments to the following address or call us directly at (650) 506–7000.

Oracle Applications Documentation Manager
Oracle Corporation
500 Oracle Parkway
Redwood Shores, CA  94065
U.S.A.

Or, send electronic mail to appsdoc@us.oracle.com.
This chapter provides information on setting up Oracle Bills of Material, including:

- Overview of Setting Up: page 1 – 2
- Setup Steps: page 1 – 3
- Defining Bills of Material Parameters: page 1 – 7
- Creating Alternates: page 1 – 8
- Creating Custom Deletion Constraints: page 1 – 9
- Creating a Department Class: page 1 – 10
- Defining a Department: page 1 – 11
- Assigning Resources to a Department: page 1 – 13
- Defining a Resource: page 1 – 14
- Creating a Workday Exception Template: page 1 – 23
- Creating a Workday Calendar: page 1 – 25
- Creating a Workday Pattern: page 1 – 28
- Creating Shifts and Shift Times: page 1 – 29
- Importing Bills and Routings: page 1 – 33
- Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34
Overview of Setting Up

This section contains an overview of each task you need to complete to set up Oracle Bills of Material.

**Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard**

If you are implementing more than one Oracle Applications product, you may want to use the Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard to coordinate your setup activities. The Implementation Wizard guides you through the setup steps for the applications you have installed, suggesting a logical sequence that satisfies cross-product implementation dependencies, and reduces redundant setup steps. The Wizard also identifies steps that can be completed independently, by several teams working in parallel, to help you manage your implementation process most efficiently.

You can use the Implementation Wizard as a resource center to see a graphical overview of setup steps, read online help for a setup activity, and open the appropriate setup window. You can also document your implementation, for further reference and review, by using the Wizard to record comments for each step. See: Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard User’s Guide and Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide.

**Set Up Oracle Applications Technology**

The setup steps in this chapter tell you how to implement the parts of Oracle Applications specific to Oracle [Product Name].

The Implementation Wizard guides you through the entire Oracle Applications setup, including system administration. However, if you do not use the Wizard, you need to complete several other setup steps, including:

- performing systemwide setup tasks such as configuring concurrent managers and printers
- managing data security, which includes setting up responsibilities to allow access to a specific set of business data and complete a specific set of transactions, and assigning individual users to one or more of these responsibilities

Also, if your product uses Oracle Workflow to, for example, manage the approval of business documents or to derive Accounting Flexfield values via the Account Generator, you need to set up Oracle Workflow. See: Oracle Workflow Guide.
See Also

Oracle Applications Implementation Wizard User’s Guide
Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide
Oracle Workflow Guide

Setup Prerequisites

Before you set up Oracle Bills of Material, you must complete the setup for the following:

In Oracle Inventory:

– Defining Items. See: Defining Items, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

Setup Steps

Step 1  Set Profile Options (Required)

Profile options specify how Oracle Bills of Material controls access to and processes data. In general, profile options can be set at one or more of the following levels: site, application, responsibility, and user.

Oracle Bills of Material users use the Update Personal Profile Options form to set profile options only at the user level. System administrators use the Update System Profile Options form to set profile options at the site, application, responsibility, and user levels. See: Oracle Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34

Step 2  Define Exception Templates (Optional)

You can define your own exception templates. When you assign an exception template to your workday calendar, you can assign workday exceptions to account for plant workday differences—such as holidays, scheduled maintenance, or extended downtime.

Step 3  Define and Build your Workday Calendar (Required)

You define a workday calendar for one or more organizations, and assign an exception set to each calendar. For each workday calendar
and exception set, you assign a list of holidays or workday exceptions. You then define shifts for your workday calendar, and assign any shift workday exceptions.

After you define your workday calendar information, you build your workday calendar with the exception set. If you associate one calendar with multiple organizations, you can build your workday calendar with multiple exception sets to account for workday differences across organizations.

Attention: If you use Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP, choose the calendar options 445 weekly quarter pattern or 544 weekly quarter pattern if you want to report MRP information in weeks and months. Otherwise, if you choose 13 period calendar or Regular calendar months, you can only report MRP information in monthly buckets.

Step 4 Assign Workday Calendar to Organization (Required)
You assign a workday calendar and exception set to each of your organizations. You can share the same workday calendar across organizations with either the same or a different exception set for each organization.

Step 5 Define Bill of Material Parameters (Required)
You assign the maximum number of bill of material levels for bill explosions, loop checks and implosions. For assemble to order manufacturers, you assign configuration item information.

Oracle Cost Management does require that you assign values to each parameter if you compute an organization’s manufacturing costs based on bill of material and routing information defined in Oracle Bills of Material.

Step 6 Define Department Classes (Optional)
You can define department classes to group departments and to identify manufacturing cells. This information is for your reference only.

Step 7 Define Resources (Optional)
You can define a resource as anything of value, except material and cash, required to manufacture, cost, and schedule products. Resources include people, tools, labor purchased from a supplier, and physical space.
Step 8  Define Resource Groups (Optional)
You can group department resources by resource group to facilitate bill of resource generation and capacity planning in Oracle Capacity.

Step 9  Define Simulation Sets (Optional)
You can group deviations to available resource capacity for resource shifts and use each set in shop floor scheduling and capacity planning.

Step 10 Define Locations (Optional)
You define delivery locations for departments with outside processing resources.

Step 11 Define Departments (Optional)
You can define departments as areas within your organization where you perform work and/or collect costs.

Step 12 Assign Resources and Resource Shifts to Departments (Optional)
You can assign resources to a department and then assign shifts to those resources. You can group department resources by resource group, and assign a simulation set with capacity modifications for each resource shift.

Step 13 Define Overheads (Optional)
You can define resource overhead by using the Define Overhead form. Each overhead sub-element has a default basis, default activity, and absorption account. The overhead absorption account offsets your corresponding overhead cost pool in the general ledger.

Step 14 Associate Overheads with Departments (Optional)
You can assign overhead rates or amounts to your department by cost type and department. The cost rollup uses the assigned basis type to allocate the overhead charge. The cost rollup assigns the activity to the calculated overhead cost. You can define pending rates and use the cost rollup/update process to change the pending rates to Frozen overhead rates.
Step 15 Define Alternates (Optional)
You can define any number of alternate names that you use when you create alternate bills of material and routings. You use alternate bills and routings to produce an identical product using a different bill or routing. You can apply the same alternate name to a bill of material and a routing.

Step 16 Define Standard Bill of Material Comments (Optional)
You can define any number of standard bill of material comments that you can assign to your bills of material.

Step 17 Define Standard Instructions (Optional)
You can define any number of operation instructions that you can assign to a routing operation or standard operation.

Step 18 Define Change Order Types (Optional)
You can define mass change order types, using your own terminology, to describe mass changes to your manufacturing bills of material.

Step 19 Define Delete Constraints (Optional)
Oracle Bills of Material provides a list of rules to determine if an item, bill of material or routing can be deleted. Each rule insures data integrity across all Oracle Manufacturing applications. You can add to this list with your own business rules to further restrict the entities that can be deleted. You write each of your delete constraints as a SQL select statement that either prevents or lets a user delete an item, bill, or routing.
Defining Bills of Material Parameters

Use bill of material parameters to define modes of operation and default values for an organization that affect functions such as bill definition, bill deletion, and assemble-to-order configuration numbering.

Define bill of material parameters for each organization in which you use bills or routings. (Bill parameters are specific to, and must be defined for, each organization.) Doing so ensures access to resource, outside processing, and overhead cost information for certain cost management functions.

To define bill of material parameters:

1. Navigate to the Parameters window.

2. Enter the maximum bill levels to explode. The maximum is 60.

3. For configurations only, enter an inactive status.

4. For configurations only, enter the numbering segment to use when creating configuration item numbers.

5. Select a numbering method. A unique configuration item number is automatically assigned based on the numbering method you select:
   - **Append Sequence**: Appends a sequence number to the item segment you entered for the numbering segment.
   - **Replace with Sequence**: Replace the item segment you entered in the numbering segment with a sequence number.
   - **Replace with Order, Line Number**: Replace the item segment you entered for numbering segment with the sales order and line number.
Creating Alternates

An alternate bill describes an alternate list of component items that produce an assembly. An alternate routing describes an alternate manufacturing process that produces an assembly.

To create or update an alternate:

1. Navigate to the Alternates window.

2. Enter an alphanumeric string to describe a unique alternate.

3. Enter a date that the alternate is inactive on. As of the inactive date, you can no longer assign the alternate to a bill of material or routing.

See Also

Primary and Alternate Bills of Material: page 0 – 5
Primary and Alternate Routings: page 4 – 2
Creating Custom Deletion Constraints

Use custom deletion constraints to enforce specific business rules. Custom deletion constraints prevent the deletion of bills or routings if your data meets the conditions set forth in the constraint.

To create a custom deletion constraint:

1. Navigate to the Deletion Constraints window.
2. Enter a name for the deletion constraint.
3. Indicate whether the constraint is enabled. An enabled deletion constraint means that it is in effect when the delete concurrent program runs.
4. Select what kind of delete entity the constraint applies to: item, bill, routing, component, or operation.
5. Enter the SQL Select Statement that the delete concurrent program is to execute. You cannot update SQL statements for predefined deletion constraints.
6. Indicate whether to delete if there are rows found or no rows found by the SQL Select Statement

7. Enter a failure message from Oracle Application Object Library’s message dictionary to display if the delete fails.

See Also

Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7

Creating a Department Class

Use department classes to group departments for shop floor scheduling and control, and to identify manufacturing cells and flexible machine centers. Department classes are used for reporting purposes.

► To create a department class:

1. Navigate to the Department Classes window.

2. Enter text that uniquely describes the department class. For example, you could use ASSY to group all final assembly departments.
3. Choose the Departments button to display the departments assigned to this department class and the dates when these departments can no longer be assigned to routing operations.

Note: Assign departments to classes when you define departments.

See Also

Defining a Department: page 1 – 11
Department Classes Report: page 9 – 17

Defining a Department

A department is an area within your organization that consists of one or more people, machines, or suppliers, where you want to collect costs, apply overhead, and compare load to capacity. You assign a department to each operation in a routing, and assign resources that are available for that department.

When you define a department, you specify any department overhead costs and the resources that are available. You can enter multiple resources for each department. For each resource, you can specify the shifts that the resource is available. For each resource shift, you can also specify capacity modifications that change the available hours per day, units per day, or workdays.
To define a department:

1. Navigate to the Departments window.

2. Enter a name for the department unique for the organization.

3. Optionally, enter a department class. See: Creating a Department Class: page 1 – 10.

4. Enter a location for the department. **Attention:** You **must** assign a location to a department if it is the receiving department following outside processing. See: Outside Processing, *Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide*.

5. Enter a project expenditure organization.

6. Optionally, enter an inactive date on which you can no longer assign this department to routing operations.

7. Choose the Rates button to view the overhead rates for the department.

8. Choose the Resources button to assign and update resources to the department.

See Also

- Assigning Resources to a Department: page 1 – 13
- Department Report: page 9 – 18
Assigning Resources to a Department

To assign resources to a department:

1. Navigate to the Resources window. You can do this by choosing the Resources button from the Departments window.
   The Resources window is split into owned and borrowed resources.
2. Enter the resource to assign to the current department.
3. Optionally, for owned resources, indicate whether the resource is available 24 hours a day. You cannot assign shifts to a resource that is available 24 hours a day.
4. For owned resources, indicate whether this department can share the resource and capacity with other departments.
5. For borrowed resources, enter the owning department.
6. Enter the number of capacity units (resource units) available for this department, for example, the number of machines for a machine resource.
   Each resource can be assigned to any number of departments; multiple resources can be assigned to each department.
7. Optionally, enter a resource group for the resource in this department.
8. Enter an expenditure type for the resource.
9. For owned resources that are not available 24 hours, choose the Shifts button to assign and update shift information for the resource.

To assign shift information for the resource:

1. Navigate to the Shifts window. Do this by choosing the Shifts button from the Resources window.
2. Enter a shift number to assign to the resource.
   The shifts available to assign to the resource are those assigned to the workday calendar assigned to the organization.
3. Choose the Capacity Changes button to define capacity changes for a shift.
To define capacity changes:

Capacity modifications can add or delete a day, or add or reduce capacity for a shift.

1. Navigate to the Capacity Changes window. Do this by choosing the Capacity Changes button from the Shifts window.

2. Enter or select a simulation set for the capacity change. Use simulation sets for capacity requirements planning in Oracle Capacity. See: Creating Simulation Sets, Oracle Capacity User’s Guide.

3. Select the action to take for the department resource:
   - Add: Adds a workday and capacity changes.
   - Delete: Deletes a workday for this department resource.
   - Add or Reduce Capacity: Add or reduce capacity for a resource shift. The capacity change can fall outside a shift time, so you can add time to a shift. To reduce capacity, enter negative numbers.

4. Enter the number of resource units to increase or decrease capacity (if applicable). Make sure to use a negative number if you are reducing capacity.

5. Enter an effective date and time from which the capacity change starts. If you are adding or reducing capacity, you must also enter a date and time on which the change is no longer in effect.

   If you are adding a shift’s workday, this is the date of the new workday. If you are deleting a shift’s workday, this is the date of the deleted workday. If you are changing capacity, this is the first day the resource shift’s capacity changes.

See Also


Overview of Capacity Planning, Oracle Capacity User’s Guide

Defining a Resource

Use resources to define the time an assembly spends at an operation and the cost you incur at the operation. A resource is anything you require to perform, schedule, or cost, including but not limited to:
employees, machines, outside processing services, and physical space. A resource and usage rate for all scheduled activities is required in a routing. Scheduled resources can include queue, setup, run, and move time.

When you define your departments, you assign the resources available in each department and the shifts that each resource is available. For each operation you define, you specify a department and list of resources and usages. An operation can use any resource that is available in the department, but you do not need to use all resources assigned to the department.

**Prerequisites**

- Before you can define resources, set up your units of measure and unit of measure conversion rates. Some resources may represent currency such as a fixed charge resource, but currency resources cannot be scheduled since their unit of measure is not time–based.

- Set the site level profile option BOM: Hour UOM to hold the unit of measure that represents an hour. Oracle Work in Process prevents you from scheduling resources whose unit of measure is not in the same unit of measure class as the hour unit or measure and has no conversions defined to the hour unit or measure.
To define a resource:

1. Navigate to the Resources window.

2. Enter a resource name unique to the organization to describe the resource. For example, you could assign AS1 to signify assembler grade 1, or WE for welder.

3. Optionally, enter an inactive date after which you can no longer assign this resource.

4. Select a resource type: Amount, Currency (the set of books currency as defined in Oracle General Ledger), Machine, Miscellaneous, Person, or physical Space.

5. Enter a unit of measure (UOM) that describes how you measure the resource. (You can only update this if the BOM: Update Resource UOM profile option is set to Yes.)

6. Select a charge type. When an operation is completed, Oracle Work in Process records the units applied to the job or repetitive schedule in the resource unit of measure for all resources you charge manually or automatically. See: Charge Types: page 4 – 24.

7. Select a basis type by which to charge and schedule the resource.
   Item: Charge and schedule the resource where the resource usage quantity is the amount required per assembly unit you make.
8. Select an expenditure type for this resource.

If the Project Cost Collection Enabled parameter is set in the Organization Parameters window, you must associate the resource with an expenditure type. See: Organization Parameters Window, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide, Defining Project Parameters, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide and .

You can only select expenditure types that belong to the Work in Process expenditure type class. Expenditure types are defined in Oracle Projects. See: Expenditure Type Classes, Oracle Projects User’s Guide, Expenditure Types, Oracle Projects User’s Guide, and Defining Expenditure Types, Oracle Projects User’s Guide.

9. Indicate whether to enable the outside processing resource, and if so, enter its item number.

Attention: If you specify PO Move or PO Receipt, Oracle Purchasing uses this item when it creates requisitions for your outside processing resource. See: Overview of Shop Floor Control, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide. See: Outside Processing, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

10. Enable the Costed check box to collect and assign costs to this resource, and if so, optionally enter an activity for the resource.

You cannot view costing information if the Privilege To View Cost Information function is excluded from the responsibility. You cannot update costing information if, in addition, the Privilege To Maintain Cost Information function is excluded.

You can use activities to group resource charges for cost reporting purposes. See: Defining Activities and Activity Costs, Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide.

11. If the resource is costed, indicate whether to charge jobs and repetitive schedules based on a standard rate you define.

Or, disable Standard Rate to enter a rate to charge the resource in Work in Process for an internal resource, or derive the rate from the purchase order for an outside processing resource. For outside processing resources, if you charge a job or repetitive schedule at the standard rate, a purchase price variance is computed and posted to the rate variance account. If you charge for all other resources, if you charge a job or repetitive schedule at the actual rate, a resource rate variance is computed and posted to the rate variance account.
12. If this resource is costed, enter an absorption account (general ledger account) used to offset resource charges earned in work in process.

At period end, you normally compare this account to the resource charges in the general ledger.

For outside processing resources, the default is the receiving valuation account from Oracle Purchasing, as defined in the receiving options.

**Attention:** For outside processing resources, do not change the default receiving valuation account. When you receive an outside processing purchase order, Oracle Purchasing credits the inventory AP accrual account, and debits the receiving valuation account. Bills of Material then debits the work in process outside processing account and credits the receiving valuation account. If you change the above default account, your receiving valuation account will have an incorrect balance.

13. If this resource is costed, enter a variance account (general ledger account) to accumulate resource rate variances for a job or repetitive schedule. For outside processing resources, this is the purchase price variance account.

**To define cost type and resource rate associations:**

1. Navigate to the Resource Costs window. Do this by choosing the Rates button from the Resources window.

   **Note:** You cannot view costing information if the Privilege To View Cost Information function is excluded. You cannot update costing information if, in addition, the Privilege To Maintain Cost Information function is excluded.

2. Enter or select a cost type to associate with each resource overhead rate.

3. Enter the Resource Unit Cost, that is, the resource’s current standard cost per UOM.

**To associate overheads with resources:**

1. Navigate to the Resource Overhead Associations window. Do this by choosing the Overheads button from the Resources window.

   **Note:** You cannot view costing information if the Privilege To View Cost Information function is excluded from the responsibility. You
cannot update costing information if, in addition, the Privilege To Maintain Cost Information function is excluded.

2. Enter or select the cost type for the resource.
   The Allow Updates check box indicates whether the cost type is defined as updatable.

3. Enter or select the overhead to associate with the resource.
   For example, you could assign resource cost as dollars per hour. If you enter a new resource, you can directly enter a frozen unit cost. However, you cannot directly update the frozen unit cost for a previously entered resource.

See Also

Defining a Department: page 1–11
Defining a Cost Type, Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide
Setting Up Inventory Standard Costing, Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide
Resource Report: page 9–21
Overview of Workday Calendar

A workday calendar defines the valid working days for a manufacturing organization and consists of repeating pattern of days on and days off and exceptions to that pattern. This allows you to, for example, designate a normal workday as a scheduled downtime day, or designate a holiday as a workday.

You can define one or more workday calendars and assign them to any number of organizations, and any number of organizations can share a calendar. You can specify the start and end dates, and the weekend schedule for each calendar.

Repeating Workday Patterns

You can also define a series of repeating workday patterns for a given calendar. For example, you have a repeating two–week pattern where you work five days the first week, and three days the second week. Or, you have a repeating pattern of 17 consecutive workdays, followed by four days off. When you build the calendar, Oracle Bills of Material automatically determines the valid workdays for you, based on the patterns you specify.

You can also specify repeating workday patterns for shifts (see below).

Workday Exceptions

There are three ways to apply exceptions to the workday calendar:

- selecting individual exception days
- loading them from an exception template, another calendar, and another calendar shift
- copying a set of exceptions from another calendar.

An exception template allows you to create groups of exception dates and apply them to different calendars. You can define multiple workday exception templates that define different holidays and scheduled down times for different organizations. Multiple exception templates can be applied to the same calendar. As each template is applied, new exception dates are added to the exception list for that calendar.

Conflicts on a particular date between one template and another are resolved as follows:
• if the exception date already exists in the target calendar, it is not copied
• if the exception on day falls on a workday, the exception is copied but is redundant and has no effect on the calendar
• if the exception off day falls on a non–workday, the exception is copied but is redundant and has no effect on the calendar

This allows you to define different holidays or scheduled down times, for example, for organizations in different countries. Different organizations can use the same calendar, but apply different exception dates. In addition, you can apply the same exception dates to different organizations.

You can optionally define exception templates, lists of exception dates, before you set up your workday calendar. Then when you define your calendar, you can choose an exception template, and apply its exception dates to that calendar.

**Shifts**

For a given workday calendar, you can specify any number of shifts. Each shift can have a different weekend schedule and a list of specific work interval start and end times. For both calendars and shifts, you can assign sets of workday exceptions and repeating workday patterns.

Shifts inherit workday exceptions and workday patterns from the base calendar. Shift exceptions can either add to or override those of the base calendar.

If an exception on the base calendar changes, those shifts that do not have an overriding exception on that date will automatically reflect the change. Those shifts that do have an overriding exception on that date will not reflect the change and must be changed manually if they are to reflect the change in the base calendar.

Shift exceptions are applied to a calendar the same way as workday calendar exceptions by selecting individual exception days, by defining exception templates, or by copying a set of exceptions from another shift.

The following diagram illustrates the steps Bills of Material uses to determine workdays from an organization’s workday calendar and exception template information.
Is the date a day off in the workday pattern?

Yes → Bills of Material designates the calendar date as a non-workday

No

Is the date a workday exception (day off)?

Yes → Bills of Material designates the calendar date as a non-workday

No

Is the date a shift workday exception (day off)?

Yes → Bills of Material designates the shift’s calendar date as a non-workday for the shift

No

Bills of Material designates the shift’s calendar date as a workday for the shift

Organizations

For each organization, you specify the calendar to use. All scheduling functions use the calendar you specify. Detailed scheduling uses
specific resource availability information by department and shift to schedule resources. Dynamic lead time offsetting, however, uses an organization’s workday calendar and does not consider shift information.

See Also

Creating a Workday Exception Template: page 1 – 23
Creating a Workday Calendar: page 1 – 25
Organization Parameters Window, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

Creating a Workday Exception Template

Exception templates define and group deviations to your workday calendar, such as holidays, downtime, or scheduled maintenance.

When defining a workday calendar, specify which days (or shifts) are on and off. The workday calendar, in combination with the exceptions to it, determine the work pattern for each organization.
To create a workday exception template:

1. Navigate to the Exception Templates window.
2. Enter a unique name for the exception template.
3. Enter a date on which this template becomes inactive.
4. Enter all exception dates, and indicate whether each is an on or off workday.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Creating a Workday Calendar: page 1 – 25
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions: page 1 – 30
Workday Exception Sets Report: page 9 – 29
Creating a Workday Calendar

A workday calendar consists of a start date, and end date, and on and off days that follow one or more defined workday patterns. A workday calendar can also include shift information and exception dates, such as holidays or scheduled down time.

Use a workday calendar for forecasting and planning material requirements, use shift information for job scheduling, and capacity analysis.

Workday exceptions identify deviations to the workday calendar. Shift exceptions identify deviations for a shift.

**Attention:** Shift exceptions take precedence over workday exceptions. (This is only relevant if a workday exception and a shift exception overlap.)

To assign workday exceptions to a workday calendar or calendar shift, either select them intuitively from the Calendar Dates (or Shift Calendar Dates) window, or apply them from an existing template, calendar, or shift.

**To create a workday calendar:**

1. Navigate to the Workday Calendar window.

2. Enter a name for the workday calendar.
3. Select a quarterly calendar type:

![Workday Calendar Window]

4. Enter a start date and end date.
5. Specify the workday pattern.

---

Setting Up 1 – 25
4/4/5 Week Pattern: Two four–week periods followed by one five–week period.

5/4/4 Week Pattern: One five–week period followed by two four–week periods.

Calendar Months: Twelve periods per year based on calendar months.

13 Periods: Thirteen four–week periods per year.

Note: If you use Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP, choose the 4/4/5 Weekly Pattern or the 5/4/4 Weekly Pattern to report MRP information in weeks and months. Otherwise, if you choose the 13 Periods calendar or Calendar Months, you can only report MRP information in monthly buckets.

4. Enter a date range for the workday calendar. The default end date is four years from the start date.

Note: Days on and off are calculated based on the start date and the day of the week. For example, if you want a standard five day workweek to start on 01–JAN, you must enter the start date as the Monday before 01–JAN (unless 01–JAN falls on a Monday).

5. Continue creating the workday calendar by choosing one of the following buttons:

Workday Pattern: Set workdays on or off.

Shifts: Assign shifts to the workday calendar.

Dates: Review your work so far and its effect on the workday calendar. Do this before you build or rebuild the workday calendar you are now creating. (You can only do this after you have defined a workday pattern.)

Once you have created a workday pattern, assigned shifts, assigned workday and shift exceptions, and reviewed your work, you must build the calendar and assign it to an organization.

6. Save your work.

See Also

Copying Calendar and Shift Information: page 1 – 27
Creating a Workday Pattern: page 1 – 28
Creating Shifts and Shift Times: page 1 – 29
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions: page 1 – 30
Copy Calendar and Shift Information

You can copy the entire calendar, including workday patterns, exceptions, and all or none of its specific shift information. Or, you can copy a specific shift, including the workday patterns, exceptions, and shift times.

Exactly what is copied depends upon how you navigate to the Copy window:

- From the Workday Calendar, Calendar Dates, and Workday Patterns windows, all workday patterns, all exceptions, and selected shift information are copied.
- From the Shifts, Shift Times, Shift Dates, or Shift Workday Patterns windows, the shift workday patterns, shift exceptions, and all shift times for the specified shift are copied.

**Note:** If you copy calendar information to an existing calendar, all new information is appended to the existing calendar; existing information, in other words, is retained.

**To copy a calendar or shifts:**

1. Navigate to the Copy window. Do this by choosing Copy from the Special menu.
2. If you are copying calendar information, enter the calendar to copy information from and indicate if you want none, all, or specific shift information. If you select a specific shift, enter the shift number.
   
   If you are copying shift information, enter the calendar you want to copy the shift information from and the specific shift number.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Creating a Workday Pattern

To create a workday pattern:

1. Navigate to the Workday Patterns (or Shift Workday Patterns) window. You can do this by choosing the Workday Pattern button from either the Workday Calendar or Shifts window.

2. Enter a sequence number in which the workday patterns are applied when the calendar is built.

3. Enter the number for consecutive workdays on and off. For example, if you want Monday through Friday on and Saturday and Sunday off, enter 5 for Days On and 2 for Days Off.

4. Enter a description for the sequence.

Repeat the previous three steps for each workday pattern to create. All defined sequences are repeated for the duration of the workday calendar. If there are two sequences, sequence 1 will be in effect first, then sequence 2, then 1 again, and so on.

For example, assume that sequence 1 is 5 on and 2 off, and sequence 2 is 4 on and 3 off. The calendar shows 5 on, 2 off, 4 on, and 3 off.

5. Save your work. Doing so ensures that you can view calendar dates.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Reviewing the Workday Calendar: page 1 – 31
Creating Shifts and Shift Times

To create shifts and shift times:

1. Navigate to the Shifts window. You can do this by choosing the Shifts button from the Workday Calendar window.
2. Enter a shift number and a description.
3. Choose the Times button to open the Shift Times window.
4. Enter the start and stop times for each shift.
   - You can enter multiple start and stop times, but the start and stop times for a shift cannot overlap.
   - If you create a shift without first creating a workday pattern, a default workday pattern of 5 days on and 2 days off is created.
   - You can then update that workday pattern.
5. Save your work.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions

To select workday or shift exceptions:

1. Navigate to the Calendar Dates window (or Shift Calendar Dates window). Do this by choosing the Dates button from the Workday Calendar window.

2. Select individual days of the month to toggle them on or off. Days you change become either workday or shift exceptions, depending on how you entered the window.

3. Save your work.

To load existing workday or shift exceptions:

1. Navigate to the Exceptions window. Do this by choosing the Exception List button from the Calendar Dates window.

2. Chooses the Load button and select whether existing exceptions should be applied from a template, a calendar, or a shift.
If you select Template, enter a template name.
If you select Calendar, enter a calendar name.
If you select Shift, enter the calendar name that the shift belongs to and the shift number.

3. When finished, choose OK to save your work.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Creating a Workday Exception Template: page 1 – 23

---

Reviewing the Workday Calendar

▶ To review the calendar:
  ■ Navigate to the Calendar Dates window (or Shift Calendar Dates window). Do this by choosing the Dates button from either the Workday Calendar or Shifts windows.

See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20

---

Building the Workday Calendar

Caution: Rebuilding an existing workday calendar affects all organizations that reference the same calendar and exception template. Changes to your workday information impacts your material plans, capacity plans, scheduling, and any other function in Oracle Manufacturing that uses the workday calendar. (This does not apply if you are building a calendar for the first time.)

▶ To build the workday calendar:
  ■ From the Special menu, choose Build (or Rebuild).
See Also

Overview of Workday Calendar: page 1 – 20
Importing Bills and Routings

The Bill and Routing Open Interface programs allow you to import bill and routing information.

Imported bills include revision, component, substitute component, and reference designator information.

Imported routings include routing revision, operation, instruction, and resource information.

To import bills and routings:

1. Navigate to the Import Item Information window.
2. Indicate whether to include all organization codes in the bill of material and routing interface tables, or just the current organization.
   
   **Attention:** If you specify just the current organization, rows in the interface tables that do not have either an organization code or an organization ID assigned are ignored.
3. Indicate whether to import routings from the interface tables.
4. Indicate whether to import bills of material from the interface tables.
5. Indicate whether to delete processed rows from the bill of material and routing interface tables.

See Also

Integrating Your Systems: *Oracle Manufacturing Implementation Manual, Release 10*
Bills of Material Profile Options

During implementation, you set a value for each user profile option to specify how Bills of Material controls access to and processes data. The system administrator sets up and maintains profile values.

Profile Option Settings

You can set or view the following profile options in Oracle Bills of Material. The table also includes some profile options from other applications that are used by Bills of Material.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile Option</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>System Administrator</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>Resp</td>
<td>App</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Check for Duplicate Configuration</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Component Item Sequence Increment</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Configuration Item Delimeter</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Configuration Item Type</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Days Past Before Starting Cutoff of Order Entry Bills</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Default Bill of Material Levels</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Default WIP Supply Values for Components</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Hour UOM</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Inherit Option Class Operation Sequence Number</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Model Item Access</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Perform Lead Time Calculations</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Key

✓ You can update the profile option.
– You can view the profile option value but you cannot change it.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile Option</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>System Administrator</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>Resp</td>
<td>App</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Planning Item Access</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Standard Item Access</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM: Update Resource UOM</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOM: Check for Duplicate Configuration**
Indicates whether to search for an existing duplicate configuration rather than create a new item.

**BOM: Component Item Sequence Increment**
Indicates the value by which to increment the sequence of the component item on the bill.

**BOM: Configuration Item Delimiter**
Indicates a character used to separate the order and line numbers when you replace the base model’s segment value with the order number/line number.

**BOM: Configuration Item Type**
Indicates the item type of the new configuration items that the create configuration program creates.

**BOM: Days Past Before Starting Cutoff of Order Entry Bills**
Indicates n days ago to save versions of Order Entry bills of material in the pre–explosions table. Components effective as of n days before the current date are used to explode the indented bill.

**BOM: Default Bill of Material Levels**
Indicates the number of explosion levels to use as a default for bill of material indented explosions.

**BOM: Default WIP Supply Values for Components**
Indicates whether to default WIP Supply Type, WIP Supply Subinventory, and WIP Supply Locator from item master for a component item when defining a bill. If set to No, WIP reads the item master.
BOM: Hour UOM
Indicates the unit of measure that represents an hour. You cannot schedule resources whose unit of measure is not in the same class as the hour unit of measure.

BOM: Inherit Option Class Operation Sequence Number
Indicates whether to allow components on model bills to inherit operation information from parent items.

BOM: Model Item Access
Indicates whether a holder of this responsibility can define and update bills of material for model and option class items.

BOM: Perform Lead Time Calculations
Indicates whether to perform lead time calculations when you autocreate configuration items.

BOM: Planning Item Access
Indicates whether a holder of this responsibility can define and update bills of material for planning items.

BOM: Standard Item Access
Indicates whether a holder of this responsibility can define and update bills of material for standard items.

BOM: Update Resource UOM
Indicates whether you can update the resource unit of measure.

See Also

Setting Your Personal User Profile, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Common User Profile Options, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library, Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide
Defining Items, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide
Overview of Function Security, Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide
Implementing Function Security, Oracle Applications System Administrator’s Guide
This chapter provides you everything you need to know to define and use bills of material, including:

- Overview of Bills of Material: page 2 – 2
- Primary and Alternate Bills of Material: page 2 – 5
- Item and Routing Revisions: page 2 – 6
- Components: page 2 – 7
- Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10
- Creating Reference Designators: page 2 – 18
- Attaching Files: page 2 – 21
- Viewing an Indented Bill of Material: page 2 – 27
- Comparing Bills of Material: page 2 – 30
- Viewing Item Usages: page 2 – 32
- Bills of Material Field Reference: page 2 – 34
- Bill / Component Validation Rules: page 2 – 42
- Creating a Product Family: page 2 – 45
- Assigning Product Family Members: page 2 – 46
Overview of Bills of Material

Oracle Manufacturing and Oracle Order Entry use bills of material to store lists of items that are associated with a parent item and information about how each item is related to its parent. Oracle Manufacturing supports standard, model, option class, and planning bills of material.

See Also

Bill of Material Types: page 2 – 2
Primary and Alternate Bills of Material: page 2 – 5
Item and Routing Revisions: page 2 – 6
Components: page 2 – 7
Access Control By Item Type: page 2 – 9

Bill of Material Types

Standard Bill of Material

A standard bill of material is the most common type of bill and lists the mandatory components, the required quantity of each component, and information to control work in process, material planning, and other Oracle Manufacturing functions. Examples include bills for manufacturing assemblies, pick-to-order bills, kit bills, and phantoms.

A configuration bill (a type of standard bill) is a set of option choices made from a model bill that comprise a buildable, sellable product. Configuration items and bills are automatically created from model bills after a customer chooses options on a sales order. Or, you can manually create configuration bills by choosing options directly from a model bill.

Model Bill of Material

A model bill of material defines the list of options and option classes you can choose in Oracle Order Entry to order a configuration. A model bill also specifies mandatory components or included items that are required for each configuration of that model. You do not order or build the model itself: you order and build configurations of the model. A model bill can be either assemble-to-order or pick-to-order.
Option Class Bill of Material

An option class is an item that groups optional components on a bill. An option class is an item that becomes a level in your model bill of material. Option classes can also have mandatory components that apply for all of its options. For example, when you order a computer, the monitor is an option class, and the specific type of monitor you order is an option within that option class. An option class bill can be either assemble-to-order or pick-to-order.

Planning Bill of Material

A planning bill of material is a bill of material structure that includes a percentage distribution for its components. The percentages associated with the components on a planning bill of material do not need to add to 100%. You can define alternate and common planning bills, where the bill you reference as a common must be another planning bill.

Planning items can be nested within one another any number of times. When you nest planning items, Oracle Master Scheduling explodes forecasts level by level and applies planning percentages at each level.

Engineering Bills of Material

You can define an engineering bill of material as an alternate for a manufacturing bill. The typical use for an alternate engineering bill is to prototype variations from the primary bill that produce the same assembly.

You can specify a list of item catalog descriptive elements for model and option class engineering bills. After you release the engineering bill to manufacturing and take customer orders for specific configurations, Bills of Material creates the new configuration item and automatically assigns values to each catalog descriptive element.

Oracle Engineering users are allowed to assign manufacturing and engineering items as components to an engineering bill. Bills of Material users can assign only manufacturing items as components to manufacturing bills.

Phantoms

A phantom assembly is a non–stocked assembly that lets you group together material needed to produce a subassembly. When you create a bill of material for a parent item, you can specify whether a component is a phantom. One bill of material can represent a phantom
subassembly for one parent item, and a stocked subassembly for another parent item.

Oracle Work in Process explodes through a phantom subassembly to the components as if the components were tied directly to the parent assembly. You can define routing for phantoms assemblies the same way as other assemblies. Work in Process ignores phantom assembly routings when you define a job or repetitive schedule.

You can compute manufacturing and cumulative lead times for phantom assemblies that have routings. If you do not want to offset the components of a phantom assembly in the planning process, exclude the phantom item from the lead time calculations.

In general, phantom assemblies behave like normal assemblies when they represent a top level assembly, such as when you master schedule them or manufacture them using a discrete job. As a subassembly, however, they lose their identity as distinct assemblies and are a collection of their components. The components of the phantom subassembly are included on the job and on the pick list of the job—not the phantom itself.

Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP plans the phantom subassembly using the lot–for–lot lot–sizing technique. Otherwise, the same rules apply to phantoms as for other assemblies. Set the lead time of a phantom to zero to avoid lead time offset during the planning process.

When model or option class bills are components to another bill of material, the component supply type is phantom. See: Two–Level Master Scheduling, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide.

The cost rollup treats phantom assemblies the same as regular assemblies. The phantom is treated as a distinct entity; the cost elements of the phantom (material, resource, and so on) are added to the cost elements of the higher assembly. Also, the full cost rollup process sets the pending phantom assembly burden to 0.

See Also

Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2

Item Attributes Listed in Alphabetical Order, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide
Primary and Alternate Bills of Material

A primary bill is a list of the components you most frequently use to build a product. An alternate bill is another list of components for the same basic assembly. The primary bill is the default for rolling up costs, defining a job, and calculating cumulative item lead times.

You must define a primary bill before you define an alternate. A primary bill can have many alternate bills. Any bill of material type can have an alternate.

Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP uses the primary bill to plan your material. Oracle Order Entry uses the primary bill for model and option class products to list available options.

When you build an item, roll up costs, and perform other functions that use bills of material, you can specify whether to use the primary bill (the default) or an alternate bill. You can also use engineering change orders to control changes to primary and alternate bills of material.

Use alternate bills to account for manufacturing variations that produce the same assembly, by specifying the parent item number and an alternate name when you create a bill. You cannot enter new revisions for alternate bills of material.

You can use an alternate to define an engineering bill or routing. The alternate used as a prototype variation from the primary manufacturing bill that produces essentially the same assembly.

Bills and routings can share alternate labels. If you create an alternate bill with the same label as an alternate routing, components are assigned to operations on the alternate routing. If there is no routing with the same alternate label, components are assigned to operations on the primary routing.

See Also

Creating Alternates: page 1 – 8
Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34
Engineering Bills of Material and Routings, Oracle Engineering User’s Guide
Item and Routing Revisions

You can define any number of revisions for the item and any number of routing revisions for an item's routing.

Attention: Item revisions and routing revisions function alike and are discussed together below. However, item revisions and routing revisions are two distinct pieces of information. They are created and maintained separately and have no influence over each other.

Assign each revision a unique three character alphanumeric revision identifier (such as A, B, B1, and so on) and a revision date. Revisions are sorted according to ASCII rules. Each revision must be greater than the previous revision. Therefore, you cannot use revision 10 after revision 9 because, according to ASCII sorting, 10 precedes 9.

Use letters and/or numbers to label revisions. Letters are always upper case and numbers may include decimals. To ensure that revisions sort properly (according to ASCII sorting rules), decimals should always be followed by a number. Therefore, valid revisions can include: A, B, 1, 2, A1, B1, 1A, 1B, 0.0, 0.1, A.0, A.1, and so on. When you create an item or a routing, the beginning revision defaults to the value for Starting Revision in the Organization Parameters window.

When you create or update a bill of material or routing, you can choose to create a new revision or modify an existing revision. When adding new revisions, you should be sure that the revision date you enter does not overlap with other existing revision dates. Revisions are time-stamped, so you can determine the latest revision for multiple revisions defined on the same date. New revision numbers must be greater than the revision number of the currently effective revision.

Different versions of a bill of material or routing can be defined within the same revision. You can change component information for bills or operation information for routings without modifying the revision.

For example, assume that you defined an initial revision A on 18–AUG and made a change on 20–AUG without creating a new revision. If you make another change on 22–AUG, you can create a new revision B, effective 22–AUG. There are now three different versions of the item: revision A of 18–AUG, revision A of 20–AUG, and revision B of 22–AUG.

See Also

Defining Item Revisions, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

Routings: page 4 – 2
Components

Bills of Material restricts the types of items you can assign as components based on the type of bill you are defining.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent BOM Item Type</th>
<th>Component BOM Item Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard Item</td>
<td>Standard Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model Item</td>
<td>Standard Item, Model Item, Option Class Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option Class Item</td>
<td>Standard Item, Model Item, Option Class Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning Item</td>
<td>Standard Item, Model Item, Option Class, Planning Item</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2–1 Valid Components (Page 1 of 1)

Component Attributes and Bill Types

Each bill of material can have many components. For each component, you specify attributes, such as operation sequence, item sequence, usage quantity, yield, supply type, supply subinventory and locator, and others.

The following table lists valid component attributes for each type of bill:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Attributes</th>
<th>Standard Parent Item</th>
<th>Model Parent Item</th>
<th>Option Class Parent Item</th>
<th>Planning Parent Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item Sequence</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Sequence</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective Date Range</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning Percent</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2–2 Valid Component Attributes by Bill Type (Page 1 of 2)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Attributes</th>
<th>Standard Parent Item</th>
<th>Model Parent Item</th>
<th>Option Class Parent Item</th>
<th>Planning Parent Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yield</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include in Cost Rollup</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Type</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Subinventory</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Locator</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mutually Exclusive Options</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Flag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check ATP</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Quantity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Quantity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include in Shipping Doc.</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required to Ship</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required for Revenue</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptive Flexfield</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2 – 2 Valid Component Attributes by Bill Type (Page 2 of 2)

**See Also**

- Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34
- Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35
- Yield: page 2 – 36
- Planning Percent: page 2 – 37
- Supply Subinventory and Locator: page 2 – 38
Access Control by Item Type

Control access to bills of material by item type using the following profile options:

- BOM: Standard Item Access
- BOM: Planning Item Access
- BOM: Model Item Access (also controls access to option class items)

Each profile option can have either a Yes or No value. A Yes value indicates that you can create and update bills for the associated item type. For example, you might specify No at the site level for BOM: Standard Item Access profile to restrict access for creating standard bills. But you might specify Yes for BOM: Planning Item Access profile option at the user level for specific engineers so they can update engineering bills of material for planning items.

**Note:** Profiles are ignored in query mode. A user with no access to any type of item can query all types of bills.

See Also

- Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*
- Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34
Creating a Bill of Material

A bill of material contains information on the parent item, components, attachments, and descriptive elements. Each standard component on a bill can have multiple reference designators and substitute components.

You can create either an engineering or manufacturing bill, copy an existing bill, or reference a common bill. When you create a bill, it exists only in the current organization. To use a bill in another organization, you must either copy it or reference it as a common.


Prerequisites

- Define the parent item and all components as inventory items and set the BOM Allowed attribute to Yes and BOM Item Type to model, option class, planning or standard. See: Defining Items, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

To create a bill of material:

1. Navigate to the Bills of Material window.

   Note: If your current responsibility does not include the Privilege to Maintain security function, you can only view bill information. If so, enter selection criteria in the Find Bills window and choose the Find button. The Bills Summary folder window appears.
2. Enter the parent item for which you are creating a bill, and if you are creating an alternate bill, enter the alternate.

   **Note:** Bills and routings can share alternate labels. If you create an alternate bill with the same label as an alternate routing, components are assigned to operations on the alternate routing. If there is no routing with the same alternate label, components are assigned to operations on the primary routing.

3. Enter or select the revision and the revision date.

4. If you are updating or viewing a bill, use the Display poplist to display all, current, or future and current components effective as of the revision date you specify. Check the Implemented Only field to further restrict the components to display. See: ECO Statuses, *Oracle Engineering User’s Guide*.

   The Bills of Material window contains the following alternative regions: Main, Effectivity, Component Details, Material Control, Order Entry, Shipping, and Comments.

5. Enter the item sequence, operation sequence, and the component item. See: Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34.

6. In the Main alternative region, enter the quantity used to make one unit of this assembly item at the current operation.

   This can include negative or decimal values, subject to the following rules:
• Pick-to-order bills cannot have fractional component quantities if Oracle Order Entry is installed.
• Pick-to-order option class components cannot have negative values.
• Components with Check ATP turned on cannot have negative or zero quantities.
• If the component has Quantity Related turned on, then the component quantity cannot be fractional or negative.
• If an implemented component has Quantity Related turned on, then the component quantity must be equal to the number of reference designators. See: By-Product Recovery, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

Attention: The planning process in Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP ignores negative requirements on standard discrete jobs and components with a negative usage on a bill of material when netting supply and demand.

Note: If you enter a negative quantity for a component, you should enter either Assembly pull or Operation pull for the supply type to ensure that you transact the material when you build the bill.

The Revision field displays the current revision of the component as of the revision date of the parent item.

7. Open the Effectivity alternative region and enter the effective date range for each component. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

The Implemented check box indicates whether the component is implemented.

Checked: Component is on a pending Engineering Change Order (ECO)

Unchecked: Component is on implemented ECO or was added directly to the bill

8. Open the Component Details alternative region and enter the planning percent. See: Planning Percent: page 2 – 37.

Enter the yield. See: Yield: page 2 – 36.

Indicate whether the component should be included in cost rollups. If enabled, the material cost of this component, but not the routing cost, is included in the cost of the parent item.

Enter the supply subinventory and the locator. See: Supply Subinventory and Locator: page 2 – 38.

If you have set the BOM: Default WIP Supply Values for Components profile option to Yes, these values default from the item master. If any of these values are left blank, Work in Process will read the values contained in the item master. See: Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34

10. For model, option class, and kit bills, open the Order Entry alternative region and enter the minimum and maximum sales order quantities. See: Minimum and Maximum Quantities: page 2 – 39.

Indicate whether to check ATP. See: Check ATP: page 2 – 39.

Indicate whether the component is optional and mutually exclusive. See: Mutually Exclusive and Optional: page 2 – 38.

Enter the basis. See: Basis: page 2 – 40.

11. Open the Shipping alternative region, and choose whether the component should be listed on shipping documents, required to ship, or required for revenue. See: Shipping Details: page 2 – 40.

12. Choose buttons to perform related tasks:
   - Substitutes: assign substitute components
   - Designators: create reference designators
   - Elements: assign descriptive elements
   - Bill Details: reference common bills
   - Revision: define item revisions

See Also

Copying Bill and Routing Information: page 2 – 14
Referencing Common Bills and Routings: page 2 – 16
Assigning Descriptive Elements: page 2 – 17
Creating Reference Designators: page 2 – 18
Assigning Substitute Components: page 2 – 19
Defining Item Revisions: page 2 – 20
Attaching Files: page 2 – 21
Checking for Bill Loops: page 2 – 21
Copying Bill and Routing Information

You can save time defining new, similar bills or routings by copying their information rather than creating them manually.

You can copy a bill or routing from your current organization or from another organization that shares your same item master organization. You can then modify your new bill or routing as necessary.

You can copy any revision of a primary or alternate bill or routing. Subinventory and locator information are not copied across organizations.

Bills of Material Only

When you copy bills from your current organization, everything is copied to the new bill including the supply type and the supply subinventories and locators.

You can only copy bills between items having the same BOM Item Type attribute. For example, if the new bill is a model bill, you can only copy existing bills that are model bills.

Know the structure of the bill you are copying, since the copy function only copies single level components of the bill. For example, if the parent item whose bill you want to copy has single level components that are subassemblies, the bill copy function will not copy the components of the subassembly.

When you copy the bill from another organization, the components on the bill you are copying must exist in the target organization. The supply subinventories and locators are not copied. Substitute component items must also exist in the target organization to be copied.

When copying an engineering bill to manufacturing, only those single-level manufacturing (not engineering) components are copied.
Routings Only

When copying from another organization, only operations occurring in departments that exist in both organizations are copied. Similarly, only resources that exist in both organizations are copied. The resource must also belong to the same department in the target organization.

To copy bill or routing information:

1. Navigate to the Copy Bill / Rtg From window. Do this by choosing the Special menu item and then choosing Copy Bill / Rtg From.

2. Enter the organization, item, alternate, revision, and revision date for the bill or routing that to copy.

3. Select a copy option:
   - **Current**: components or operations effective on the revision date.
   - **Future and Current**: same as current and all future components and operations.

   **Note**: After you have copied information, you can update it as you see fit.

4. Choose the Copy and Save button. Doing so copies the appropriate components (or operations) and automatically saves the new bill or routing.

See Also

Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*

Bill / Component Validation Rules: page 2 – 42
Referencing Common Bills and Routings

Any two items that are of the same bill type can share common bills and routings. If two different items share the same bill or routing, you can define the bill or routing once and then maintain one copy instead of two.

The following notes apply to both bills and routings:

- You cannot reference another bill or routing as a common if that bill or routing also references a common. In other words, you cannot create a chain of common references.
- You can only reference another bill or routing as a common if it has the same alternate name assigned to it.
- If the current bill you are creating is a manufacturing bill, the common bill must also be a manufacturing bill.

Common Bills of Material

If two or more organizations manufacture the same item using the same bill of material, you can define the bill in one organization and reference it from the other organizations. Necessary changes must then be made to the referenced bill.

When you enter orders for models, kits, and assemblies in Oracle Order Entry, you must define all bills of material in your item master organization (your OE: Item Validation Organization profile option value). Using common bills of material, you can share bills of material that exist in your manufacturing organizations with your item master organization.

When you define a bill for a new assembly, you can reference another assembly and organization as a common bill of material. You do not need to make any further entries for the bill of material.

The following notes apply to bills of material:

- You can only reference bills from organizations that have the same item master organization as the current organization.
- If components already exist for the new bill, you cannot reference another bill as a common.
- If your new assembly is in a different organization than the bill you reference, all component items must exist in the new bill’s organization. This also applies to substitute components.
Common Routings

The following notes apply to routings:

- You cannot reference a routing outside your current organization.

Attention: If an item’s routing references another item’s routing as a common, you should set both items’ lead time lot size to the same value. The lead time lot size and the routing information are used to compute lead times.

To reference a common bill or routing:
1. Navigate to the Common Bill window from either the Bills of Material window or the Routings window. Do this by choosing Assign Common Bill from the Special menu.
2. Enter the organization for the item to reference as a common bill.
3. Enter the bill or routing that to use as a common.
4. Choose OK.

Assigning Descriptive Elements

For each model and option class bills only, you can specify a list of item catalog descriptive elements. Values are assigned to catalog descriptive elements when new configuration item are created. The descriptive element value of the chosen option is assigned for each descriptive element.

Prerequisites

- For model bills, you must assign the item to a catalog group. See: Defining Item Catalog Groups, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide.

To assign descriptive elements:
1. Navigate to the Descriptive Elements window. Do this by choosing the Elements button from the Bills of Material window.
2. Enter a descriptive element to assign automatically based on the option chosen in the current bill.
For model bills, you can only specify a descriptive element name within the model item catalog group. For option class bills, you can specify a descriptive element name from any catalog group.

When you order a configuration, Bills of Material automatically creates and assigns the configuration item to the model’s item catalog group, and assigns values to the descriptive elements in this group.

See Also

Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2

Creating Reference Designators

Reference designators are sequenced comments and instructions that pertain to a component. For example, you may have drawings that clarify the assembly process for certain components, or further instructions for the use of a large quantity of the same component. You can specify whether to assign one reference designator for every usage of the component or assign any number of reference designators to the component.

Planning bills and model, option class, and planning components cannot have reference designators.

Reference designators are sorted in alphanumeric order on inquiries and reports. You can also specify a comment for each reference designator.

To create reference designators:

1. Navigate to the Reference Designators window. Do this by choosing the Designators button from the Bills of Material window.

2. Indicate whether you want component quantity related to the number of reference designators.

   Off: Assign any number of reference designators to each component (the default). The number of reference designators is independent of the component quantity. With Quantity Related unchecked, if the usage quantity of the component is four, you could, for example, define six or more reference designators.

   On: Use one reference designator per usage of the component. The component usage quantity must be a positive integer in order for
you to use this option. When the bill requires a quantity of four of a given component, you assign four reference designators to that component, one for each usage.

3. Do one of the following:
   - Enter a reference designator for the component. (A reference designator must be ten characters or less.)
   - Choose the Add Range or Delete Range button to open the Range window. Enter a prefix and a suffix for the range of reference designators to add or delete. For example, if you enter A as the Prefix, 1 and 4 as the starting and ending values, and XYZ as the Suffix; A1XYZ, A2XYZ, A3XYZ, and A4XYZ are the reference designators.
   - To number reference designators, use the Starting Value field to define the beginning value for a range of reference designators. Then either enter the number of values to add or delete, or define the ending value in the Ending field.

4. Save your work.

Assigning Substitute Components

You can assign any number of substitute items to each bill component and you can assign the same substitute item to more than one component. The substitute item quantity is the quantity needed to replace the full component quantity. The quantity can differ from the component usage quantity. Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP reports these substitutes on some planning reports, such as the MRP Detail Report. Oracle Work in Process does not consider substitute items in its pick lists.

Planning bills and model, option class, and planning components cannot have substitute components.

To assign substitute components:

1. Navigate to the Substitute Components window. Do this by choosing the Substitutes button from the Bills of Material window.
2. Enter a substitute item for the component. If you are using Bills of Material, use a manufacturing item; if you are using Oracle Engineering, use an engineering or a manufacturing item.
3. Enter the quantity of the substitute item needed to replace the full component quantity. This quantity can differ from the bill usage quantity of the component.

---

### Defining Item Revisions

To define an item revision:

1. Navigate to the Item Revisions window. Do this by choosing the Revisions button from the Bills of Material window.
2. Enter an alphanumeric revision for the item.
3. Enter the effective date of the item revision.

---

### Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents

You can attach documents to bills of material or to routing operations.

**Attention:** To maintain compatibility between Bill and Routing Operation documents in Release 10SC, and Standard Comments and Standard Instructions in Release 10, use only the Bill Attachments category and the Short Text datatype. Documents defined with Oracle Bills of Material, Release 10SC using other categories or datatypes are not visible to Release 10 users.

To define bill or routing operation documents:

- Navigate to either the Bill Documents or Operation Documents window.

---

**See Also**

Item and Routing Revisions: page 2–6

Working With Attachments, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*

Attaching Files: page 2–21

Standard Comments Report: page 9–26
Attaching Files

You can attach text and files, such as spreadsheets, graphics, and OLE objects to bills of material, engineering change orders, and routing operations.

For example, an attached file may include comments, such as a graphical representation of the bill structure, or detailed instructions and schematic diagrams for routing operations.

To attach files:

- From the Bills of Material, Engineering Change Orders, or Routings window, choose the Attachments icon.

  Note: To attach a file to a bill or ECO, position the cursor in the header region. To attach a file to a routing operation, position the cursor in the Operations region.

See Also

Working With Attachments, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*

Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents: page 2 – 20

Checking for Bill Loops

Bill loops occur when a bill is assigned as a component to itself somewhere in the multilevel structure of the bill. The loop check program searches for such loops.

The Check for Loops program can be run from the Special menu of the Bills of Material window.

To check for bill loops:

1. Navigate to the Bills of Material window.

  Note: The Check for Loops item on the Special menu is only available when creating a new bill, after that new bill has been saved.
2. Choose Check for Loops from the Special menu.

See Also

Bill of Material Loop Report: page 9 – 5
Mass Changing Bills of Material

Use the Mass Change Bills window to mass change your manufacturing or engineering bills of material. You can define a mass change to add, delete or replace a component, alter a component quantity or yield, or change other component information. You can mass change all using bills of material or choose a subset of bills by item range, item category, or item type. You can mass change primary and alternate bills of material for each using assembly. For engineering bills, you can schedule the mass change for a future effective date. For manufacturing bills, you can implement the changes immediately. You can also report effective changes for all using assemblies or components.

If you are using Oracle Engineering, you can create an engineering change order (ECO) from the mass change order that affects both engineering and manufacturing bills. You can then implement the ECO and report on any effected using assemblies.

Bills of Material or Engineering take into account all the actions you enter to determine if the change is applicable. For example, suppose you add component A and delete component B. This change is made only if component A does not exist and component B does exist on the selected bills. The change is applied only if both conditions are met. In this example, two records are affected.

Prerequisites

- You must create at least one bill of material. See: Creating Bills of Material: page 2 – 10
- You must create at least one change order type. See: Defining ECO Types, Oracle Engineering User’s Guide.
To mass change bills of material:


2. Enter a mass change order number and a change order type. If you have Engineering installed and have set up ECO Autonumbering, a default value will appear. See: Defining ECO Autonumbering, Oracle Engineering User’s Guide.

   The change order type describes your changes and determines the type of bills to modify.

3. Enter the effective date for the change (for engineering bills only).

4. Indicate whether to increment the parent item’s revision by 1 (numeric based revisions only).

5. Indicate whether to update Work in Process material requirements of any unreleased discrete job, or any release or unreleased repetitive schedule associated with the parent items.

6. Specify the parent items to change.

   You can use a category set, a category range, or an item range. Alternatively, indicate whether to change all primary bills, all primary and alternate bills, or a specific alternate bill.
Optionally, enter a base model to mass change configuration items related to this model that meets your other selection criteria. Enter an item type for the parent items.

7. Choose the Changes button to enter component changes.

8. When finished, select the action(s) to take.
   For Bills of Material, select Report (to see affected bills), Implement (to perform the mass change), both, or neither.
   For Engineering, select Report, Create ECO, both, or neither.
   If you make no selection, the mass change order is saved for you to work on later.
   **Caution:** You cannot undo a mass change. However, you can create another mass change to reverse the effects of a previous mass change.

9. Choose the Submit button to launch the selected actions.

**To enter component changes:**


2. For each component item to change, indicate the action to perform. You can add or delete components to or from a parent item.
   Or, you can update existing information about the component on the parent item. With this option a new row is created that you enter new information into.

3. In the Main alternative region, enter the item sequence, operation sequence, the quantity, and the inactive date for each component. See: Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34.

4. Open the Component Detail alternative region and enter the planning percent. See: Planning Percent: page 2 – 37.
   Enter the yield and indicate whether the component should be quantity related and included in cost rollups. See: Yield: page 2 – 36

   Enter the supply subinventory and locator identifiers. See: Supply Subinventory and Locator: page 2 – 38.

6. For model, option class, and kit bills, open the Order Entry alternative region and enter the minimum and maximum sales

Indicate whether to check ATP. See: Check ATP: page 2 – 39.

Indicate whether the component is optional and mutually exclusive. See: Mutually Exclusive and Optional: page 2 – 38.

7. Open the Shipping alternative region, and choose whether the component should be listed on shipping documents, required to ship, or required for revenue. See: Shipping Details: page 2 – 40.

To set Engineering Change Order (ECO) options:

For Oracle Engineering only.

1. From the Mass Change Bills window, choose the Special menu item and choose Set ECO Options.

2. Use the Plan check box to indicate whether you want Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP to include the revised item in the planning process.

3. Indicate whether each revised item’s effective date is based upon the planned item’s use–up date. If so, check the Use Up check box.

4. Enter an item whose use–up date is tied to each revised item effective date. The default is the use–up item associated with the plan name. This can be the revised item or a component of the revised item.

Oracle Alert automatically notifies the planner for the revised item if the use–up date changes based on information from a new MRP plan.

See Also

Bill / Component Validation Rules: page 2 – 42

Engineering Change Order Schedule Report, Oracle Engineering User’s Guide

Overview of Engineering Change Orders, Oracle Engineering User’s Guide
An indented (multilevel, exploded) manufacturing or engineering bill of material displays the structure of a manufacturing or engineering item.

**To view an indented bill of material:**

1. Navigate to the Indented Bill of Material window.
2. In the Find Indented Bills window, enter the item and/or the alternate for the bill.
   
   **Note:** If you entered an alternate, the explosion process will search for all components with the same alternate label. If, at any level, an alternate with the same label is not found, the primary is used. The explosion process then continues searching for the original alternate label.
3. Enter the revision, the revision date, and the number of levels to explode for this bill. See: Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34.
4. Select a Display option: All, Current, or Future and Current components effective as of the revision date you specify.

   Use the Implemented Only field to further restrict the components displayed. See: ECO Statuses, *Oracle Engineering User’s Guide*.
5. Select a sort option for each level of the bill, by operation sequence then item sequence, or item sequence then operation sequence.
6. Indicate whether to see costing information, and if so, enter the cost type.

   You can simulate product costs for budgeting and planning analysis purposes. To do so, the Privilege to View Cost security function must be enabled for the responsibility.

   Indicate whether to view lead time and/or material control information, and whether to use planning percents when calculating component quantities.

   Any field that is checked here causes a corresponding alternative region to appear on the Indented Bill of Material window.
7. Choose the Find button to explode the bill.
The Indented Bill of Material window appears and displays the first level of the bill.

The Components window contains the following alternative regions, some of which may be disabled according to the display options you selected: Item Details, Bill Details, Quantities, Effectivity, Material Control, Lead Time, Order Entry, Costing, and Shipping.

8. Use the control buttons to expand or collapse portions of the indented bill. You can only expand up to the explosion level indicated in the Find window.

See Also

Using Query Find, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Using Query Operators, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Searching For Information, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Performing Query–by–Example and Query Count, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34
Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35
Yield: page 2 – 36
Planning Percent: page 2 – 37
Supply Subinventory and Locator: page 2 – 38
Extended Quantity: page 2 – 37
Mutually Exclusive and Optional Components: page 2 – 38
Check ATP: page 2 – 39
Minimum and Maximum Quantity: page 2 – 39
Basis: page 2 – 40
Shipping Details: page 2 – 40
Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2
Viewing Item Usage: page 2 – 32
Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
Comparing Bills of Material

You can compare any two bills. For example, compare the primary to an alternate bill, the same bill across organizations, or the current revision of an item to a future revision.

Note: The two assemblies and their attributes are referred to as Bill 1 and Bill 2, or simply as 1 and 2.

To compare two bills of materials:

1. Navigate to the Bill Components Comparison (or the Report Bill of Material Comparison) window.
2. In the Find Bills to Compare window, enter selection criteria for Bill 1. Do the same for Bill 2.
3. Check comparison criteria check boxes for the attributes to compare the bills on.
4. Select an Order By option: by item sequence then operation sequence, or by operation sequence then item sequence.
5. To view only the differences between bills, check the Differences Only check box.
6. Choose the Compare button to compare the bills online. (If you are running the Bill of Material Comparison Report, choose the Report button.)

The Bill Components Comparison window displays both bills. Two columns of check boxes, one for assembly #1 and one for assembly #2, indicate if the component appears in the assembly.
The Main alternative region displays the item and operation sequences, the planning percent, the quantity, and whether the item is optional.

The Effectivity alternative region displays the effective date range and whether the item is implemented.

**See Also**

Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34  
Planning Percent: page 2 – 37  
Yield: page 2 – 36  
Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35  
Bill of Material Comparison Report: page 9 – 2
Viewing Item Usage

View an imploded list of all the using assemblies for a specified component.

► To view item where used:

1. Navigate to the Item WhereUsed window.

2. In the Find Item WhereUsed window, enter the item, the revision, the revision date, and the number of levels to implode for this bill of material.

Attention: Only Current components effective as of the revision date you specify will be displayed.

Use the Implemented Only field to further restrict the components to display.

3. Choose the Find button to open the Item WhereUsed window.

The level bill of material where the inventory item appears in the using assembly is displayed, starting at 1 (level 2 signifies the parent of level 1; level 3 signifies the parent of level 2, and so on.)

The Item WhereUsed window has three alternative regions: Item Details, Bill Details, and Effectivity.

The Item Details alternative region displays the revision, the type, and the status for the component.
The Bill Details alternative region displays the alternate, whether the bill is an engineering bill, the usage quantity (of the item in the immediate parent assembly), the ECO that implemented the component (if it has been implemented), and the operation sequence.

The Effectivity alternative region displays the effective date range and whether the item is implemented. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

4. Use the control buttons to expand or collapse portions of the indented item usages.

See Also

Using Query Find, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*


Searching For Information, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*

Performing Query–by–Example and Query Count, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*

Viewing An Indented Bill of Material: page 2 – 27

Item Where Used Report: page 9 – 19

Consolidated Bill of Material Report: page 9 – 12
Bills of Material Field Reference

This section describes the use of certain major fields.

Item and Operation Sequence Fields

Item Sequence Field

The item sequence indicates the sequence of the item on the bill. It is used to sort components on reports and when choosing options from a model bill in Oracle Order Entry. This defaults to the value of the highest existing component item sequence plus the value of the BOM: Component Item Sequence Increment profile option. If this profile option is not set, the default is 10. You can override or change this number.

Operation Sequence Field

On a bill, the operation sequence indicates the order in which you perform operations on a routing. You can assign any component to any operation on the routing, including all components to the same operation (such as the first operation). The planning process assigns material requirement dates based on the operations to which you assign each component. Valid values range from 1 to 9999.

You can define bills of material for items with or without routings. If you use routings, you can either define the bill first or the routing first.

With component–to–operation assignments, you can schedule and issue component material to the operation that requires the component on the exact requirement date. You can also assign the same component on the bill to different operations on the routing, with different usage quantities for each assignment.

If no routing exists for the item, all components default to operation sequence 1. You cannot change this value until you define a routing for the item. After you define the routing, you can update your bill of material with routing operations if you want specific component–to–operation assignments.

If you define the routing before you define a bill, assign components to valid routing operations, or an operation sequence 1 when you define the bill. If you define an alternate routing and then define the alternate bill, you can assign components to the alternate routing operations. If
you define an alternate bill and no alternate routing exists, you can assign components to the primary routing operations.

See Also

Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34
Overview of Material Control, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide
Material Requirements Planning, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide
Creating a Routing: page 4 – 8

Effective Date Fields

Effective date fields appear throughout Oracle Manufacturing products. These are defined as follows:

- **Effective From / Effective Date**: First date and time the component or operation becomes effective. For components, the effective date is the first day a component becomes effective for a bill. For routings, it is the first day an operation becomes effective in a routing.

- **Effective To / Inactive After**: Last date and time the component or operation is effective. After this date, you can no longer assign the component to a bill or the operation to a routing.

- **Inactive On**: The first date and time the component or operation is inactive. As of 12:00AM on this date, you can no longer assign the component to a bill or the operation to a routing. If this date equals the effective date, the component or operation is inactive.

To avoid confusion, make sure that effective dates for one revision do not overlap with those of another.

For example, if you must introduce three new components to a bill in a specific order, you should assign each change to the appropriate parent item revision. So, component 1 of revision B may be effective today, component 2 of revision C tomorrow, then component 3 of revision D may be effective the following day. If there are two operations on a routing and you replace the first operation with a new operation, you
should set the effective date for the new operation to the date the
operation you are replacing becomes inactive.

Effective dates can be either the current date or a date in the future; you
cannot enter a date in the past.

For components, the default effective date is the later of the current
date or the date entered for the bill. If an inactive date already exists
for the operation sequence/item combination, the default effective date
of any subsequent rows with the same operation sequence/item
combination is the same as the inactive date. That means that the
subsequent operation sequence/item combination becomes effective
immediately after the previous one becomes inactive.

You cannot assign duplicate components to the same operation with
overlapping effective date ranges. For example, suppose component
A001 at operation 10 is effective from 10–JAN to 14–FEB. You may not
add another component A001 at operation 10 to the bill with an
effective date of 10–FEB.

Use Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP to identify any overlapping
effective dates.

See Also

Item and Routing Revisions: page 2 – 6

Yield Field

The yield is the percentage of the component that survives the
manufacturing process. A yield factor of 0.90 means that only 90% of
the usage quantity of the component on a bill actually survives to be
incorporated into the finished assembly.

To compensate for the expected gain or loss, any function that explodes
a bill of material increases or decreases the material requirements for
the component, based on the yield.

\[
\text{component requirements} = \frac{\text{component usage quantity}}{\text{component yield}}
\]

For example, when Master Scheduling/MRP plans a component with a
usage quantity of 10 units per assembly and a component yield of 50%
(or 0.5), the resulting component requirements increase to 20 units per assembly.

**Note:** You cannot enter component yield for an option class item or for any components of a planning bill.

The default is 1, indicating 100% yield (no loss or gain).

**See Also**

Material Requirements Planning, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide*

---

**Planning Percent Field**

Master Scheduling/MRP uses component planning percentages in forecast explosions through planning, model, and option class bills of material.

Assign planning percentages to components on model, option class, and planning bills.

**Note:** You can assign planning percents to mandatory components on model or option class bills only if the Forecast Control attribute is set to Consume and Derive.

Enter a component planning percent to specify a distribution percentage for the components. You can enter a planning percent greater than 100 to overplan a component. The default is 100.

**See Also**

Material Requirements Planning, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide*

Two–Level Master Scheduling, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide*

---

**Extended Quantity Field**

The extended quantity of the component used in the parent item is calculated as follows:
((explosion quantity of parent item × component usage quantity) \\
÷ component yield) ÷ (1 − shrinkage rate for parent)

See Also

Two–Level Master Scheduling, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide

Supply Subinventory and Locator Fields

Work in Process pulls components from the supply subinventory and the locator within the subinventory during backflushing.

Assign a supply subinventory and locator, if applicable, to components that have a supply type of Assembly pull or Operation pull. You must specify a supply locator if you have mandatory locator control for the supply subinventory. The system validates any item subinventory and locator restrictions you defined during your Oracle Inventory setup.

See Also

Overview of Material Control, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide

Mutually Exclusive and Optional Fields

The following pertains to options for model and option class bills. All components are mandatory on standard and planning bills. Model and option class bills can have both mandatory and optional components.

The Optional field indicates whether the component is mandatory or optional. The Mutually Exclusive field applies only to option class bills and indicates whether you can choose one or many options within an option class.

Oracle Order Entry uses the Mutually Exclusive check box in combination with the Optional check box to determine the number of option items you can or must choose to order the components of the option class bill. Refer to the table below for details on how the
Optional check box and the Mutually Exclusive check box work together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ ] Mutually Exclusive</th>
<th>[X] Mutually Exclusive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[X] Optional</td>
<td>Choose any number or no options on the option class bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ] Optional</td>
<td>Choose at least one option on the option class bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(default)</td>
<td>Choose one, and only one, option on the option class bill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Check ATP (Available To Promise) Field**

Check ATP indicates whether to perform an ATP check on the component. The default is enabled if both the parent’s Check Component ATP item attribute is **Yes and the component’s Check ATP item attribute is set to Yes**. You can update this check box only if **all** of the following are true:

- Selected the Check ATP attribute of the component item
- Selected the Check Component ATP item attribute of the assembly item
-Entered a component quantity greater than 0

**Minimum and Maximum Quantity Fields**

Oracle Order Entry uses the minimum and maximum quantities to determine the number of optional items available when orders are placed for components on option class bills. If you enter a minimum sales order quantity, you must also enter a maximum sales order quantity. You can only enter a minimum and maximum quantity range that contains the quantity for the component. If you update the component quantity, the minimum and maximum values are changed to include the new component quantity.

**Attention:** These attributes do not apply to mandatory standard components.
**Basis Field**

If the component is an option class item, you must indicate whether you want to override the default quantity for the option class when a sales order is entered (the default). Option class quantities affect the mandatory standard components assigned to the option class.

If you select None for the Basis field, Oracle Order Entry can override the default quantity for the option class. Order Entry defaults the total quantity to release as the component quantity multiplied by the option class extended quantity.

If you select Option class for the Basis field, Order Entry cannot override the default quantity for the option class. Order Entry calculates the total quantity to release as the component quantity multiplied by the option class extended quantity.

**Note:** Set the basis to Option class for an ATO option class component. When creating a configuration bill, Oracle Manufacturing computes the total quantity required for a mandatory standard component as the component quantity multiplied by the option class extended quantity—regardless of the quantity entered on the sales order.

---

**Shipping Details Fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shippable</td>
<td>Indicates whether the component item is shippable. The default is determined by the value of the Shippable Item attribute in the item master.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Include on Ship Docs</td>
<td>Indicates whether Oracle Order Entry prints the components on external shipping documents, such as pack slips and commercial invoices. The default is off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required to Ship</td>
<td>Indicates whether the component is required to ship the order. You can only update this check box if the Assemble to Order item attribute for the assembly item in the Define Item window is disabled. This attribute only affects PTO included items (not ATO items or configurations), and is only effective</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
if your OE: Reservations profile option is set to No. If OE: Reservations is set to Yes, then the Ship Model Complete inventory attribute and the Ship Set feature in Order Entry control what is required to ship, and what prints on the pick slip.

### Required for Revenue

Indicates whether the component is required to recognize revenue before you ship the order. You can only update this check box if the Assemble to Order item attribute for the assembly item in the Define Item window is disabled.

This attribute is recognized by the Receivables Interface in Order Entry. Required for Revenue components prevent their parent item from invoicing until they are shipped. For example, if you have an option class bill with a non-optional component with the Required for Revenue attribute set to Yes, then the option class will not invoice until the non-optional component has shipped.

This field does not affect mandatory or optional components for an ATO item or configuration.
Bill / Component Validation Rules

The following bill and component validation rules apply when defining, copying, or mass changing bills of material:

- Depending on the setting of the profiles that limit access to different bill types (BOM: Model Item Access, BOM: Planning Item Access, BOM: Standard Item Access), you may not be able to modify bills.
- You cannot add a component with an operation sequence number that does not exist in the routing. The only exception is for operation sequences that are equal to 1.
- You cannot add a component to a bill where the component item is the same as the parent.
- You cannot add a component to a bill where the same component, with the same operation sequence and effectivity, already exists on the bill.
- Only manufacturing items can be added to manufacturing bills.
- You cannot add a component to a bill that is being referenced as a common bill from another organization, where the component does not exist in the other organization.
- You cannot add components to common bills.
- You cannot add a component to a bill if it violates the rules shown in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Child</th>
<th>Configured</th>
<th>ATO Model</th>
<th>ATO Option Class</th>
<th>ATO Standard</th>
<th>PTO Model</th>
<th>PTO Option Class</th>
<th>PTO Standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Planning</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configured</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATO Standard</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2 – 3
Table 2–3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parent Child</th>
<th>PTO Option Class</th>
<th>ATO Model</th>
<th>ATO Option Class</th>
<th>ATO Standard</th>
<th>PTO Model</th>
<th>PTO Option Class</th>
<th>PTO Standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PTO Option</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend:

- **Y**  Allowed
- **N**  Not allowed
- **P**  Must be phantom
- **O**  Must be optional

“Configured” items are Assemble to Order (ATO) items that have a base item identification. ATO items have the Assemble to Order attribute set to Yes. Pick to Order (PTO) items have the Pick Component attribute set to Yes.

For example, if the parent item is a PTO model, it is not allowed to have a component that is a planning item, it is allowed to have a component that is a configured item, any ATO model component must be a phantom assembly, and any ATO standard component must be optional.

- For ATO, PTO, and phantom bills where the parent item has ATP Components set to No, you cannot add a component that has either the item attributes Check ATP set to Yes or ATP Components set to Yes.
- You cannot add an optional component to a bill that is neither model or option class.
- You cannot add a component, whose planning percent is not equal to 100, to a standard bill.
- You cannot add a mandatory component, whose planning percent is not equal to 100 and has the Forecast Control attribute set to Consume or None, to a model or option class bill.
- When adding a component to a bill, the mass change will set the Check ATP component attribute to No if the component quantity is less than or equal to 0.
See Also

Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10
Copying Bill and Routing Information: page 2 – 14
Referencing Common Bills and Routings: page 2 – 16
Deleting Components and Operations: page 5 – 5
Mass Changing Bills of Material: page 2 – 23
Creating a Product Family

A product family is a grouping of products whose similarity in resource usage, design, and manufacturing process facilitates planning at an aggregate level. A product family cannot be a part of a Standard, Model, Option Class, or Planning Bill of Material. Consequently, a product family is a single level bill. Members of a product family can belong to one and only one product family. You will be able to plan based on the planning percentages and effectivity of the product family members.

Attention: You must make sure that the Product Family flex structure is configured to match the System Items structure. If the System Items structure is changed it should be reflected in the Product Family structure as well. See: System Item Structure, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

To create a product family item:

1. Navigate to the Master Item window.

Attention: If you are a Flow Manufacturing customer, select Product Family from the Flow Manufacturing window. The product family template is automatically applied.

2. Apply the product family template. See: Item Templates, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide

Note: You are not required to use the product family template. If you choose not to use a template, make sure that you define the correct product family attributes. Specifically, the item must be an inventory item and the BOM Item Type must be Product Family. The item must also be BOM allowed.

See Also

Assigning Product Family Members: page 2 – 46
Oracle Flow Manufacturing: page 3 – 2
Setting Planning Percentages for Product Family Members: page 2 – 47
Assigning Product Family Members

**Prerequisites**

- To create a product family you must first define all of the family members as items and the product family item. See: Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide* and Defining Product Families: page 2 – 45.

**To assign product family members:**

1. Navigate to the Product Family window.
   
   **Note:** If you are using Oracle Flow Manufacturing, you can select Product Family Members from the Flow Manufacturing menu.

2. Select a product family item.

3. Select item members of the product family. The description, type, forecast control, and planning method for the member items are displayed for the items selected.

   **Attention:** When an item is included in a product family, it will be automatically assigned to the same category as the family item.

4. Commit the record by selecting Save from the File menu.

   **Attention:** You can commit a record without assigning planning percentages. The default planning percent is 100. The default effectivity date is the system date.

**See Also**

- Oracle Flow Manufacturing: page 3 – 2
- Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 16
- Setting Planning Percentages for Product Family Members: page 2 – 47
- Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10
Setting Planning Percentages for Product Family Members

Prerequisites

- To assign planning percentages you must first create a product family item and assign member items. See: Defining Product Families: page 2 – 45 and Assigning Product Family Members: page 2 – 46.

To assign planning percentages to product family members:

1. Navigate to the Product Family window. Do this by selecting Defining Product Families from the Bills of Material menu.
2. To assign planning percentages for a member item, choose the Allocation button.
3. Enter the product family member’s planning factor.
4. Enter effectivity dates for the item. Effectivity dates cannot overlap.
5. Optionally, enter comment text.
6. Commit the record by selecting Save from the File menu.

Attention: You can commit a record without assigning planning percentages. The default planning percent is 100. The default effectivity date is the system date.

See Also

Oracle Flow Manufacturing: page 3 – 2
Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10
CHAPTER 3

Flow Manufacturing

This chapter provides an overview of flow manufacturing processes and explains how to use Flow Manufacturing with Oracle Bills of Material. Task descriptions provide you with detailed information about the following:

- Overview of Flow Manufacturing Procedures: page 3 – 5
- Creating Flow Manufacturing Standard Events: page 3 – 9
- Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10
- Calculating Operation Times: page 3 – 14
- Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 16
- Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16
- Saving a Baseline: page 3 – 19
- Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21
- Mixed Model Map Calculations: page 3 – 24
Flow Manufacturing is an innovative manufacturing approach that aligns production with consumer demand. Flow manufacturing employs Just–In–Time (JIT) concepts such as manufacturing to demand (vs. forecast), production lines for families of products (vs. process layout), pull material using kanbans (vs. push material), backflush material and costs upon completion (vs. at each operation), and so on. This in turn helps decrease inventories, optimize machine utilization, reduce response time to customer needs, and simplify shop floor activities.

To prepare for flow manufacturing, you design production lines and production processes so that each line can produce a constantly changing mix of products within a family at a steady rate. Flow manufacturing production lines are designed to support the inter–mixed production of multiple products within a family on the same line. Line design includes grouping products into families, defining the processes and events required to produce each product, and grouping events into operations. By specifying demand rates for each product you can predict line capacities. As a part of line design, you will be able to specify demand forecasts for the products, derive TAKT times (also called Operational Cycle Time), and calculate optimal kanban quantities.

See Also

Flow Manufacturing Definitions: page 3 – 3
Overview of Flow Manufacturing Procedures: page 3 – 5
Assigning Product Family Members: page 2 – 46
Creating Flow Manufacturing Standard Events: page 3 – 9
Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 16
Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10
Flow Manufacturing Definitions

Areas
Areas represent either a section of the plant floor or an entire plant facility. You can use inventory organizations to define areas.

Locations
Locations represent storage areas from which material is pulled to fulfill kanban needs. You can use subinventories to define locations. See: Defining Subinventories, Oracle Inventory User's Guide.

Products and Parts
Products and parts are similar to items defined in Oracle Manufacturing. The item type attribute can be used to identify different types of items (e.g. finished goods, spare parts, etc.)

Product Structure
This process is similar to defining the bills of material for an item in Oracle Manufacturing.

Product Families
Families are groups of products that have similar product synchronization. Families can be defined in Oracle Manufacturing as a special type of item called "product family." Items defined using this type should be recognized by other products as a type of item that does not physically exist, but is used to group other items (products).

Lines
Lines are manufacturing work areas where you manufacture families of products.

Processes
Processes are very generic activities that often consist of multiple events that are performed in a specific sequence. For example, the process of painting could entail preparing the surface, polishing the surface, and painting the surface. Processes can be consistently used across product families and lines. As a result, processes are predefined and either copied or referenced to the product synchronization (routing) of each item.
Events

Events are the lowest level activities with resources assigned to them. They are similar to existing Operations. The definition of a process and an event can be used consistently across product families and lines. These can be predefined. Once defined, they can be either copied or referenced to the product synchronization (routing) of each item.

Kanban Pull Sequences

Kanban pull sequences define the replenishment chain for each item. This information includes the from and to locations, work and wait times, number of cards to be printed, and so on.

Line Operations

Line operations are used to regroup events to approximate TAKT time. They are line specific and are derived and defined during line balancing. Attributes of line operations primarily include an identification and a description.

Product Synchronization (Sync)

Product sync is the assigning of processes to products and defining the sequence in which they are performed. This is similar to defining a routing for an item.
Overview of Flow Manufacturing Procedures

The sequence in which tasks are performed in flow manufacturing line design varies. This section provides a broad overview of the necessary steps to enable flow manufacturing.

Flow Manufacturing Set Up

► To setup Flow Manufacturing:

1. Create setup data. This includes the following:
   • Define items, including both products and parts. Select Products and Parts from the Flow Manufacturing window. Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*.
   • Define bills of material. See: Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10.
   • Define resources. See: Defining a Resource: page 1 – 14.

Product Synchronization (Sync)

► To create product sync for standard items:

1. Navigate to the Flow Routing window. Do this by selecting Flow Routing from the Flow Manufacturing window.
2. Optionally, create a flow routing for an item. Assign the processes and events that you have defined.

**Note:** Processes should either be copied or referenced from the standard processes while events can be flow routing specific and do not have to be copied or referenced.

3. Assign resources to events. You can assign resources to standard events and non-standard events.

4. Create a forecast, master demand schedule, and/or master production schedule with demands for the items.

**To create product sync for product family items:**

1. Navigate to the Flow Routing window. Do this by selecting Flow Routing from the Flow Manufacturing window.

2. Optionally, create a flow routing for the product family item. Assign the processes and events that you have defined.

**Note:** Processes should either be copied or referenced from the standard processes while events can be flow routing specific and do not have to be copied or referenced.

3. Create a flow routing for the members of the product family.

**Attention:** To reduce data entry, you can copy the product family flow routing to the product level flow routings. You can then modify as needed. Processes and line operations that are copied from the family to the member will retain any references to the corresponding process or line operation.

4. Assign resources to the events.

5. Create a forecast, master demand schedule, and/or master production schedule with demands for the members of the product family.

**Flow Manufacturing Line Balance**

**To balance a flow manufacturing line:**

1. Generate a mixed model map for a line, product family, or forecast. You can also assign a boost percentage, number of days and number of hours per day for the line. The mixed model map will reveal the line TAKT time, process TAKT times, weighted average times, and so on. See: Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16.
2. Create a line operation for the current line. You can do this by selecting the Special menu in the Mixed Model Map window. The line identification will default to the standard operations window and the operation type will be set to line operation.

3. Assign line operations to the product level routings. You can do this by selecting Routing from the Special menu. 

Attention: You can copy or reference all of the line operations for the current line into the routing to reduce data entry effort.

4. Regroup events at the product level routing into line operations to approximate TAKT time. You can do this by assigning the line operation in the Parent Line Op field of the event.

5. Regenerate the mixed model map by line operation to review and make sure that the line is balanced. The mixed model map will also show the resource (machine / labor) and IPK requirements. See: Generating a Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18.

6. Select Save as Baseline from the Special menu to save this mixed model map. This map can be used to compare resource and IPK requirements against future runs of the of the same line. See: Saving a Baseline: page 3 – 19.
Defining Flow Manufacturing Standard Processes

Standard operations for flow manufacturing allow you to create standard processes for a regular manufacturing line as well as a flow manufacturing line. Processes are generic activities that often comprise of multiple events which are performed in a specific sequence.

To define a Standard Process for a flow manufacturing line:
2. Enter the line identifier, sequence number, code and description.
3. Optionally, enter a department, display sequence, and minimum transfer quantity.

See Also

Creating Flow Manufacturing Standard Events: page 3 – 9
Creating Flow Manufacturing Product Synchronization: page 3 – 10
Defining Flow Manufacturing Standard Events

Standard operations for flow manufacturing allow you to create standard events for a regular manufacturing line as well as a flow manufacturing line.

To define a Standard Event for a flow manufacturing line:

1. Navigate to the Standard Events window.
2. Enter the code and description.
3. Choose the Operation Resources button to define resources.

Note: Standard Events are optional.

See Also

Creating Flow Manufacturing Product Synchronization: page 3 – 10
Creating a Flow Routing

To create product synchronization you can design a flow routing including events, processes, and line operations.

Attention: You cannot create flow routings for planning or pick-to-order items.

Prerequisites

- You must define at least one department before you can create a routing.
- BOM Allowed must be set to Yes for the item you are creating a routing for.

Note: You can create a routing manually, copy an existing routing, or reference a common routing. See: Copying Bills and Routings: page 2–14 and Referencing Common Bills and Routings: page 2–17.

To create a flow routing:

1. Navigate to the Routing window.
2. Select the item for which you are creating a flow routing.
   Note: You can create a flow routing for a product family item.
3. If you are creating an alternate flow routing, enter an alternate. For a primary flow routing, do not enter an alternate. See: Primary and Alternate Routings: page 4–2.
   Note: You can also create alternate standard (non-flow) routings for the same item.
4. Enter the line for which you are creating the flow routing,
5. If you are updating an existing flow routing, enter the routing revision and the effective date. See: Creating a Routing Revision: page 4–12 and Routing Revisions: page 2–6.
   Note: Items can have flow and non-flow routings. To define non-flow revisions, you must switch to the Bills of Material Responsibility.
6. Enter a total cycle time for the flow routing.
   The total cycle time can be manually input or calculated by your application. To calculate this value, select Calculate Total Cycle
Time from the Special menu. The cursor must be in the Total Cycle Time field.

7. If you would like this item to be considered in the capable to promise capacity check, select the Capable to Promise button. See: Capable to Promise, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User’s Guide.

**Note:** Capable to promise describes an available to promise calculation that considers both available material and capacity of manufacturing and distribution resources. You are able to define one and only one CTP routing for each item.

8. Select a display option to display All, Current, or Future and Current operations effective as of the revision date you specify.

9. Select Events, Processes, or Line Operations to define the elements of your flow routing.

10. To copy an existing flow routing, choose Copy Routing From in the Special menu and select an item to copy.

11. Enter the operation sequence. See: Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34.

**Note:** The operation sequence and code must be unique for each flow routing.

The Routings window has four alternative regions: Main, WIP, Operation Times, and Description.

12. If you are creating a flow routing for events, click the Event Resources button and define resource values. For an event, you can also define a department, parent process, and parent line operation.

13. Enter an effective date range. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

14. For operations in ATO model or option class flow routings only, indicate whether the operation is option dependant, that is, whether the operation is dependant on the choice of an optional component. All mandatory components and their related operations appear on the routing for each configuration. The default is enabled. See: Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2.

15. Optionally, enter the item’s manufacturing lead time percent required to complete all previous operations on the routing. See: Calculating Manufacturing Lead Times: page 8 – 17.
If the manufacturing lead time equals 10 days and all previous operations combined require 2 days, the lead time percent is 20%.


Indicate whether to backflush components on shop floor moves at this operation. A backflush transaction automatically pulls operation pull components from inventory. Work in Process also pulls all Operation pull components at non-backflush operations preceding this operation (through the previous completed backflush operation.) See: Backflush Transaction Options, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

17. Enter the minimum transfer quantity of assemblies to move from this operation to the next. Work in Process will warn you if you attempt to move a number less than this value. If you used a standard operation, this value defaults to minimum transfer quantity defined for the standard operation. Otherwise the default is 0.

**Note:** Use attachments, such as operation method sheets, for routing operations. See: Attaching Files: page 2 – 21.

18. To enter completion subinventory and locator information or view a common flow routing, choose the Routing Details button to open the Routing Details window. See: Completion Subinventory and Locator: page 4 – 20.

19. If this item is a member of a product family then specify in the Routing Details window.

20. If you would like to include this flow routing in a mixed model map, then click the Mixed Model map button in the Routing Details window.

**Note:** You can only select one routing for an item to be included in a mixed model map.

21. While in the Routing Details window, optionally, enter a priority.

22. Open the Operation Times alternative region to define or calculate operation times.

23. To use system calculated operation times, select Calculate Operation Times from the Special menu.

You can also enter your own values. These values are used in Mixed Model Map calculations.
To create a flow routing network:

1. From the Routing window, click the Routing Network button.

2. Select Processes or Line Operations from the poplist.

3. Select a range of operations and sequence codes and select their type of connection.

4. Enter a percentage for the connection type.

See Also

Calculating Operation Times

You can calculate machine time, labor time, and total time for your processes, line operations, and events defined in your flow routing. You can also enter your own machine times, labor times and total times in the Flow Routing window.

Prerequisites

- You must first define the events, processes and line operations to be included in your flow routing.

To calculate operation times:

1. Navigate to the Flow Routing window.
2. Select Calculate Operation times from the Special menu.

Note: You can also enter your own machine times, labor times, and total times in the Flow Routing window. To do so, manually enter this information in the User Machine Time, User Labor Time, and User Total Time fields.

Attention: The mixed model map calculations are based exclusively on the system calculated operation times.

See Also

Operation Times Calculations: page 3 – 22
Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10

Operation Times Calculations

The operation times calculations are based on resources in the Flow Routing with the following criteria:
The resource unit of measurement (UOM) is in the UOM class associated with the BOM profile option, BOM: HOUR UOM. See: Bills of Material Profile Options: page 1 – 34.

The resource is scheduled.

The system takes the sum of all usage rates for resources that meet the above criteria in the Flow Routing. If the resource basis is lot, the system will temporarily convert the basis to item before calculating the operation times.

See Also

Calculating Operation Times: page 3 – 14
Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10
Mixed Model Map

Line design is the process of defining a production line, the products that you make on the line, the operations that you perform to make these products, and the resources and materials consumed at each step. The mixed model map helps you to create and monitor your line design. To balance a line against a specified forecast, you will use the mixed model map which allows you to calculate the following at each process or line operation:

- Process volume
- Machine, labor, and total times
- Machine, labor, and total weighted times
- Machine and labor requirements
- TAKT Time
- In-process kanban (IPK) requirements

See Also

- Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16
- Saving a Baseline: page 3 – 19
- Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21
- Mixed Model Map Calculations: page 3 – 24
- Overview of Flow Manufacturing Procedures: page 3 – 5
- Assigning Product Family Members: page 2 – 46
- Creating Flow Manufacturing Standard Events: page 3 – 9
- Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10

Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters

Prerequisites

- You must create at least one product line before you can create a mixed model map.

**To enter mixed model map parameters:**

1. Navigate to the Mixed Model Map window. Do this by choosing Mixed Model Map from the Flow Manufacturing menu.

2. Enter the line for which you want to generate a mixed model map.

3. If this line is a member of product family, enter the family name.

4. Select a forecast or master demand schedule from the Demand Type poplist.
   
   A demand code will be generated depending on your selection.

5. Enter a start date used to calculate the start of the time fence used to calculate demand days. The default is today’s date.

6. Enter an end date to determine the end of the time fence.
   
   The number of the Demand Days will be determined by the dates you supply.

7. Enter the hours per day that you are calculating.

8. Optionally, enter a boost percentage.
   
   The boost percentage determines the predicted demand fluctuations.
9. You can balance the line by line operation or process. Select Line Operation or By Process to determine what you will see on the X–axis of the matrix.

**Note:** You can navigate directly to the Standard Line Operations form from the Special menu.

10. Select the sorting order to apply to your map.

11. Select the time type to be used in this calculation.

12. Select whether to calculate IPKs for the entire process or for each individual machine

   The number of machines should be specified at the department associated with the process. See: Creating a Flow Routing: page 3 – 10

13. Select a unit of measurement for the time values to be shown in the mixed model map.

   **Note:** You can navigate to the Kanban Details form and the Planning Forecast window from the Mixed Model Map Special menu. The forecast displayed in the mixed model map will be automatically queried.

**See Also**

Generating a Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18

Saving a Baseline: page 3 – 19

Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21

Mixed Model Map Calculations: page 3 – 24

---

### Generating a Mixed Model Map

**Prerequisites**

- You must enter parameter information for the mixed model map you would like to generate. See: Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16.
To generate a mixed model map:

1. Navigate to the Mixed Model Map window. Do this by choosing Mixed Model Map from the Flow Manufacturing menu.

   **Note:** You can navigate to the Flow Routing form from the Mixed Model Map by selecting Flow Routing from the Special menu. The process or line operation that is selected will be the first process or line operation displayed. If an item is selected in the mixed model map, then the flow routing for this item will be displayed.

2. Click the Generate button. The Mixed Model Map window will appear displaying the TAKT time hours available, and demand at capacity.

**See Also**

- Saving a Baseline: page 3 – 19
- Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21
- Mixed Model Map Calculations: page 3 – 24

**Saving a Baseline**

You can save a Mixed Model Map as a baseline for a certain family on a certain line with a specific forecast. In the future, you can compare any other calculations for this Family / Line / Forecast to this baseline.

**Prerequisites**

- You must enter parameters and generate a mixed model map before you can save its baseline. See: Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16 and Generating a Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18

**To save a baseline:**

- After you have generated a mixed model map, choose Save as Baseline from the Special menu.

A message appears to inform you that a baseline has been saved for the line and family you specified. When you save a baseline both the processes and line operations are saved.
Attention: If you have a previously saved baseline for this family and line, it will be replaced when you save it again.

See Also

Querying a Saved Baseline: page 3 – 20
Deleting a Save Baseline: page 3 – 21
Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21
Mixed Model Map Calculations: page 3 – 24

Querying a Saved Baseline

You can bring up a saved baseline to compare calculations with different variables or over a period of time

Prerequisites

- You must enter parameters and generate a mixed model map before you can query its baseline. See: Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16 and Generating a Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18

To query a saved baseline:

- Choose View Baseline from the Special menu.

  The mixed model map for the family and line you are working on appears. You can view the baseline variance for the mixed model map calculations. Positive changes will appear in blue and negative changes will appear in red.

  Note: To view all saved maps, navigate to the Line field and select the query button.

See Also

Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator: page 3 – 21
Deleting a Saved Baseline

If you have saved baselines that are no longer applicable, they should be deleted.

To delete a saved baseline:
1. Query the baseline you would like to delete. See: Querying a Saved Baseline: page 3 – 20
2. Choose the Delete button.
   The baseline values for the processes and line operations will be deleted.

Placing a Mixed Model Map on the Navigator

You can save a baseline to your Navigator desktop for easy access. See: Using the Navigator’s Documents Region, Getting Started and Using Oracle Applications.

Prerequisites

You must first create a Mixed Model Map before you can place it on the navigator. See: Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16 and Generating a Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18.

To place a Mixed Model Map on the navigator:
1. Enter or query the baseline you would like to save to the Navigator.
2. Choose Place on Navigator from the Action menu.
   Note: The Place on Navigator option is only available when you are in the Mixed Model Map matrix window.

See Also

Calculating Operation Yields

The system will calculate the cumulative yield, reverse cumulative yield and net planning percent for each process and line operation. This information is used in mixed model map calculations.

Prerequisites

- You must enter a value for yield at each process or line operation.

To calculate operation yields:

1. Navigate to the Mixed Model Map window.
2. Select Calculate Operation Yields from the Special menu.

   **Note:** To calculate the cumulative yield and reverse cumulative yield, the system only considers the primary path in your routing network definition. Alternate paths, feeder lines, and rework loops are not considered. To calculate net planning percent, the system only considers primary path and rework loops in your routing network definition. Alternate paths and feeder lines are not considered.

   **Attention:** You must either calculate either or manually enter operation yields for the mixed model map results to be accurate.

See Also

- Operation Yields Calculations: page 3 – 22
- Mixed Model Map Overview: page 3 – 16
- Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16

Operation Yields Calculations

The system will calculate the cumulative yield, reverse cumulative yield and net planning percent for each process and line operation. This information is used in mixed model map calculations.
Cumulative Yield:
The system calculates the cumulative yield by taking the product of the yields at each operation. Only operations on the primary path of the routing network are considered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Yield (User Entered)</th>
<th>Cumulative Yield</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>.90</td>
<td>1 * .90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>.95</td>
<td>1 * .90 * .95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>.98</td>
<td>1 * .90 * .95 * .98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reverse Cumulative Yield:
The system calculates the reverse cumulative yield by taking the product of the yields at each operation starting with the last operation. Only operations on the primary path of the routing network are considered.
### Net Planning Percent:

The system calculates the net planning percent by taking the product of the network percentages at each operation along the primary path and rework loops in the routing network.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Network Percent</th>
<th>Net Planning Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>(100)(80) + (5)(100)(80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>(100)(80)(100) + (5)(100)(80)(100)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>(100)(80)(100)(100) + (5)(100)(80)(100)(100)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### See Also

- Calculating Operation Yields: page 3 – 22
- Mixed Model Map Overview: page 3 – 16
- Entering Mixed Model Map Parameters: page 3 – 16

### Mixed Model Map Calculations

The mixed model map enables you to design and monitor each part of the line design process. The mixed model map bases calculations on the date range entered in the Mixed Model Map window if this date range falls within the forecast date range. Otherwise the forecast date range will be used.

(Mixed Model Map Calculations Formula Key): page 3 – 27
Line TAKT Time:

Line TAKT time is calculated as follows:

\[ LTAKT = \frac{H \cdot T_c \cdot \text{# of Days}}{D \cdot B} \]

Process Volume:

Process volume is calculated as follows:

\[ PV = \frac{D \cdot \text{AVG}(Pln_{NET}) \cdot (1 + B)}{\text{AVG (CYREV)}} \]

Note: Process volumes are calculated for line operations as well as processes. A process volume is calculated for a product and a process (or line operation). If the reverse cumulative yield is 0, the system will assume it is 1.

TAKT Time:

The TAKT time is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{TAKT Time} = \frac{\text{# of Days} \cdot H \cdot T_c}{\sum PV} \]

Note: TAKT time is calculated for a process or line operation, unlike the line TAKT time which is calculated for the entire line.

Machine Weighted Time:

Machine weighted time is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{MWT} = \frac{\sum (PV \cdot T_M)}{\sum PV} \]

Labor Weighted Time:

Labor weighted time is calculated as follows:
\[ LWT = \frac{\sum (PV \times T_L)}{\sum PV} \]

**Elapsed Weighted Time:**

Elapsed weighted time is calculated as follows:

\[ EWT = \frac{\sum (PV \times T_E)}{\sum PV} \]

**Note:** Machine, labor, and elapsed weighted times are calculated by process (or line operation). For example, if your mixed model map displays five processes, then the mixed model map will calculate five machine weighted times, one for each process.

**Machines Needed:**

Machines needed is calculated as follows:

\[ MN = \frac{MWT}{TAKT} \]

**Note:** The mixed model map calculates the number of machines needed by process (or line operation). Therefore, in this formula, MWT represents the machine weighted time for a process (or line operation). And, TAKT represents the TAKT time for a process (or line operation).

**Labor Needed:**

Labor needed is calculated as follows:

\[ LN = \frac{LWT}{TAKT} \]

**Note:** The mixed model map calculates labor needed by process (or line operation). Therefore, in this formula, labor weighted time
represents the LWT for a process (or line operation). And, TAKT represents the TAKT time for a process (or line operation).

**In Process Kanbans (IPKs) Needed:**

IPKs Needed is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{IPKN} = \frac{(\text{EWT} - \text{LTAKT}) \times H \times T \times C}{\text{EWT} \times \text{LTAKT}} \]

**Note:** The mixed model map calculates the number of IPKs needed by process (or line operation).

**IPKs Needed by Machine**

IPK’s needed by machine is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{IPKN}_M = \frac{\text{IPKN}}{M} \]

**Mixed Model Map Calculations Formula Key**

- **D** = Total demand
- **B** = Boost percent in decimal form (Entered in mixed model map)
- **H** = Hours/day (Entered in mixed model map)
- **# of Days** = Number of demand days (Entered in the mixed model map)
- **T_C** = Time conversion factor
  
  You can select the time unit of measure (UOM) in the mixed model map.
  
  - **T_C** = 1 if time UOM = Hour
  - **T_C** = 60 if time UOM = Minute
  - **T_C** = 3600 if time UOM = Second
\( T_M = \text{Machine time for a product and process (or line operation) combination} \)

\( T_L = \text{Labor time for a product and process (or line operation) combination} \)

\( T_E = \text{Elapsed time for a product and process (or line operation) combination} \)

Note: Machine, labor and elapsed times are calculated in the flow routing form.

\( \text{AVG} = \text{A function meaning “take the average of...”} \)

\( \text{Pln}_{\text{NET}} = \text{Net planning percent in decimal form} \)

Note: Net planning percent is calculated in the flow routing form.

\( \text{CY}_{\text{REV}} = \text{Reverse cumulative yield} \)

Note: Reverse cumulative yield is calculated in the flow routing form.

\( M = \text{The number of machines used at a particular process or line operation} \)

\( \sum = \text{A function meaning take the sum over all products} \)

\( \sum \text{PV} \)

For example, this means, for a given process, take the sum of the process volume over all products displayed in the mixed model map.
Defining Flow Manufacturing Line Operations

Standard operations for flow manufacturing allows you to create line operations for a regular manufacturing line as well as a flow manufacturing line.

Prerequisites


To define a Standard Line Operation for a flow manufacturing line:

1. Navigate to the Line Operations window.
2. Enter the code and description, line identifier, sequence number and minimum transfer quantity.
3. Optionally, enter a department and choose the remaining options.
This chapter tells you everything you need to know to use routings, including:

- Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
- Creating a Routing: page 4 – 8
- Creating a Standard Operation: page 4 – 16
- Viewing Resource Usage: page 4 – 18
- Routings Reference: page 4 – 20
Overview of Routings

A routing defines the step-by-step operations you perform to manufacture a product. Each routing can have any number of operations. For each operation you specify a department that determines the resources you may use for that operation.

See Also

Primary and Alternate Routings: page 4 – 2
Routing Revisions: page 2 – 6
Operations: page 4 – 4
Resource Usage: page 4 – 5
Defining a Department: page 1 – 11
Defining a Resource: page 1 – 14

Primary and Alternate Routings

A primary routing is the list of operations most frequently performed to build a product. You can define one primary routing and many alternate routings an item. When you define a new primary routing, you specify only the item (no alternate name) and you can assign a routing revision. For example, you can define a routing for an item that includes two operations—an assembly and a testing operation. You typically build your product with these operations, so you define this routing as the primary routing for the item.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Alternate Name</th>
<th>Operation Sequence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Test A/B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4 – 1 Primary Routing (Page 1 of 1)

You can define an alternate routing to describe a different manufacturing process used to produce the same product. Unlike a new primary routing, specify the item and alternate name to define an
alternate routing. You must define a primary routing before you can define alternate routings, and you can define any number of alternate routings for an item. For example, you have three test machines, one new machine capable of performing both tests A and B and two older machines that can only perform test A or test B. Ideally you would like to use the new machine that can perform both tests, but if it is unavailable, you use the other machines to complete the job.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Alternate Name</th>
<th>Operation Sequence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Test A/B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Split Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Test A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Test B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4 – 2 Primary and Alternate Routings (Page 1 of 1)

Bills and routings can share alternate labels. If you create an alternate bill with the same label as an alternate routing, components are assigned to operations on the alternate routing. If there is no routing with the same alternate label, components are assigned to operations on the primary routing.

**Engineering Routings**

You can define an engineering routing as an alternate for a manufacturing routing. This would typically be used to prototype a variation from the primary routing that produces the same assembly.

Both engineering and manufacturing routings share the same resource, department, and standard operation information.

**See Also**

Creating Alternates: page 1 – 8
Primary and Alternate Bills of Material: page 2 – 5
Operations

To define a routing operation you first specify an operation sequence number to indicate the order to perform operations. Components in your bill of material can reference an operation sequence. Next, you can choose either a standard operation, or you can enter a new operation.

Sequence of Operations

Routings define the step-by-step descriptions, or operations, for manufacturing an assembly. Each operation on a routing defines a specific portion of the manufacturing process for the assembly. You can use operations to identify the location, the quantity, and the state of completion of the assemblies you are currently manufacturing.

For each component item on the bill of material associated with a routing, you can specify the operation sequence where you require the item. You can then only issue material where and when it is needed. See: Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10.

Standard Operation

A standard operation is a commonly used operation that you define as a template to default operation information when you define routings. When you define a new operation on a routing, you can specify a standard operation whose information Bills of Material copies into the operation you are currently defining. You can then change any of the copied information for the new operation. See: Creating a Standard Operation: page 4 – 16.

Backflushing Transactions

You can specify at what point in the routing you backflush component material. Moves automatically backflush the appropriate components at the time they are needed. You can postpone the backflush of material at time–critical operations until a later operation. See: Issuing Components From Inventory to WIP, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

Minimum Transfer Quantities

You can set the minimum quantity that you move from an operation when you define a routing. The Shop Floor Transaction window issues a warning when you move a quantity less than this minimum.
Attachments
You can attach files, which may include instructions, to routing operations. See: Attaching Files to Bills and Routing Operations: page 2–21.

Option Dependent Operations
When you define routings for model and option class items, you can indicate the operations that appear in a configuration item's routing only if you choose an option that references that operation. Bills of Material automatically creates a configuration item's routing including all operations that are not option-dependent and any option-dependent operations referenced by a chosen option. See: Configure to Order Environments: page 6–7.

Resource Usage
You can associate multiple resources with an operation on a routing. For each resource, you can determine if you want to include that resource in scheduling and lead time calculations. You can also collect costs for a resource on a routing if you specified the resource as a costed resource. See: Defining a Resource: page 1–14.

Item or Lot-Based Resources
You can specify resource usage as a fixed rate per job for activities such as setup and teardown, and variable rates for resources whose usage depends on the number of units processed. For lot based resources you choose the Lot basis type and your usage rate is fixed, and for item based resources you choose the Item basis type to indicate that your usage rate is variable.

For example, you might define an operation where you schedule lot based and item based resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Sequence</th>
<th>Resource Sequence</th>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>UOM</th>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Resource Unit Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Queue</td>
<td>Time</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Lot</td>
<td>$0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Labor 01</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Item</td>
<td>$10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4–3 Scheduling by Item or Lot (Page 1 of 1)
Oracle Cost Management divides lot based resource usages by lot size to determine item costs. For example, you might define a lot based resource that represents time spent setting up a machine, and a resource that represents the time to teardown the machine for the next job or schedule. You could schedule and collect costs for both the setup and teardown resources.

**Resource Scheduling**

You can specify usage rates either as resource units per item unit, or the inverse – item units per resource unit. For example, you could specify usage rate for a machine hour resource in either units per hour, or hours per unit. For each routing operation, you can specify multiple resources and usage rates.

For each resource, you can specify whether to schedule it, and whether it overlaps the prior or next operation. If you specify that a resource overlaps the prior operation, Oracle Work in Process schedules the resource so that the last resource on the prior operation ends at the same time as this resource. Conversely, if you specify a resource that overlaps the next operation, Work in Process schedules the resource so that the first resource on the next operation begins at the same time as this resource.

Work in Process schedules assuming that the department uses up to the number of assigned units of the resource simultaneously – up to the number that exist in the department.

If you specify that a resource is available 24 hours (such as time in a drying area), Work in Process schedules it around the clock regardless of shifts. See: Assigning Operation Resources: page 4 – 13.

**Resource Charging Method**

You can associate multiple resources with an operation on a routing, and for each resource you can determine how the resource is charged. You can automatically charge resources in Work in Process based on move transactions and purchase order receipts (for outside processing). You can also manually charge resources. See: Overview of Resource Management, *Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide*.


**Resource Capacity Modifications**

For each resource on a shift, you can override the number of resource units available (such as number of machines) and specify additions or
reductions to the amount of time the resource is available on that shift. These capacity modifications are assigned to simulation sets that you can use later when you generate a capacity plan or schedule discrete jobs or repetitive schedules to simulate capacity changes. See: Overview of Capacity Planning, *Oracle Capacity User’s Guide*.

**Resource Usage Rate or Amount**

The usage rate or amount is the amount of the resource consumed at the operation, either the quantity per item or per lot. If you assign more than one resource unit to work at an operation, Work in Process considers the number of units when scheduling a resource at an operation. (Assign the usage rate for the resource as the total quantity per item or lot, regardless of the number of resource units you specify.) For example, if you define a machine resource to require 10 hours per item and you assign 2 resource units to the resource, Work in Process automatically schedules 2 machines for 5 hours.

**Standard Resource Costs**

When you define a routing, you specify the resources you use to build the items, and each resource has costs associated with it. By defining the routing with specific resources, you establish standard resource costs for any item that uses the routing. See: Setting Up Manufacturing Standard Costing, *Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide*.

**Outside Processing**

You can define outside processing resources and then assign these resources to operations on a routing. Work in Process considers any operation that has an outside processing resource as an outside operation. See: Outside Processing, *Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide*.
Creating a Routing

For each routing, define the operations, the sequence to perform them, and the resources required at each operation. You can define either a primary or an alternate routing.

**Attention:** You cannot create routings for planning or pick-to-order items.

**Note:** Use attachments, such as detailed operation instructions, for routing operations. See: Attaching Files: page 2 – 21.

**Prerequisites**

- You must define at least one department before you can create a routing.
- BOM Allowed must be set to Yes for the item you are creating a routing for.

You can create a routing manually, copy an existing routing, or reference a common routing. See: Copying Bills and Routings: page 2 – 14. See: Referencing Common Bills and Routings: page 2 – 17

The procedure below describes how to manually create a routing.
To create a routing:

1. Navigate to the Routings window.

Note: If your current responsibility does not include the Privilege to Maintain security function, you can only view routing information. If so, enter selection criteria in the Find Routings window and choose the Find button. The Routings Summary folder window appears.

2. Enter a manufacturing item to create a routing for.

3. If you are creating an alternate routing, enter an alternate. For a primary routing, do not enter an alternate. See: Primary and Alternate Routings: page 4 – 2.

4. If you are updating an existing routing, enter the routing revision and the effective date.


5. If you would like this routing to be capable to promise, then choose the Capable to Promise button. See: Capable to Promise, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User’s Guide
Note: Capable to promise describes an available to promise calculation that considers both available material and capacity of manufacturing and distribution resources. You are able to define one and only one CTP routing for each item.

6. Select a display option to display All, Current, or Future and Current operations effective as of the revision date you specify.

To enter completion subinventories and locator information, or view a common routing, choose the Routing Details button to open the Routing Details window. See: Completion Subinventories and Locator: page 4 – 20.

7. Enter the operation sequence. See: Item and Operation Sequence: page 2 – 34

8. To use a standard operation, choose Copy Standard Operation from the Special menu and select a standard operation code.

If you use a standard operation code, the operation information for that code will be copied into the operation you are currently defining. You can then update that information as desired. See: Creating a Standard Operation: page 4 – 16.

Attention: You can assign the same standard operation to more than one operation sequence within the same routing.

The Routings window has three alternative regions: Main, WIP, and Description.

9. Enter the department in which the operation is performed.

10. Enter an effective date range. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

11. For operations in ATO model or option class routings only, indicate whether the operation is option dependant, that is, whether the operation is dependant on the choice of an optional component. All mandatory components and their related operations appear on the routing for each configuration. The default is enabled. See: Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2.

12. Optionally, enter the item’s manufacturing lead time percent required to complete all previous operations on the routing. See: Calculating Manufacturing Lead Times: page 8 – 17

If the manufacturing lead time equals 10 days and all previous operations combined require 2 days, the lead time percent is 20%.

Indicate whether to backflush components on shop floor moves at this operation. A backflush transaction automatically pulls Operation pull components from inventory. Work in Process also pulls all Operation pull components at non–backflush operations preceding this operation (through the previous completed backflush operation.) See: Backflush Transaction Options, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

Enter the minimum transfer quantity of assemblies to move from this operation to the next. Work in Process will warn you if you attempt to move a number less than this value. If you used a standard operation, this value defaults to minimum transfer quantity defined for the standard operation. Otherwise the default is 0.

See Also

Defining a Department: page 1 – 11
Creating a Standard Operation: page 4 – 16
Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents: page 2 – 20
Defining a Resource: page 1 – 14
Deleting Components and Operations: page 5 – 5
Attaching Files: page 2 – 21
Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10
Routing Report: page 9 – 23
Customizing the Presentation of Data in a Folder, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Assigning a Completion Subinventory and Locator

To assign a completion subinventory and locator:

1. Navigate to the Routing Details window. You can do this by choosing the Routing Details button from the Routings window.

2. Enter the completion subinventory and locator.

See Also

Completion Subinventory and Locator: page 4 – 20

Creating a Routing Revision

To create or update a routing revision:

1. Navigate to the Routing Revisions window. You can do this by choosing the Revision button from the Routings window.

2. Enter the routing revision.

3. Enter an effective date and time.

   The implementation date, which is either the date the revision was added or the date the routing was transferred from Oracle Engineering, is displayed. If the routing was transferred from Engineering, the ECO text is displayed.
Assigning Operation Resources

To assign a resource to a routing operation:

1. Navigate to the Operation Resources window. You can do this by choosing the Resources button from the Routings window.

2. Enter the sequence number of the resource and the resource name. You can use any resource assigned to the department. Valid values for sequence range from 1 to 9999 and must be unique for the operation.

3. Select a basis type by which to charge and schedule the resource. The default is the basis specified for the resource.

   - Item: Charge and schedule the resource by multiplying the usage rate by the job or schedule quantity for the assembly. Select Item when your charges fluctuate with quantity change.
   - Lot: Charge and schedule the resource by charging the usage rate or amount once per job or schedule. Select Lot when your resource
usage quantity is the amount required per job or schedule, for example, setup charges.

4. Enter a value for the Rate or Amount in either the Usage or Inverse fields. That is, enter the resource consumed at the operation (per item or per lot) or it’s inverse. Entering a value for either field updates the other field.

Resources with time-based unit of measures must have usage rates greater than zero.

Enter an inverse when you know the number of units a resource can process (rather than the duration an assembly unit consumes the resource. For example, if you know a resource can process 10 units per hour, enter 10 for the inverse.

Usage or Inverse can be negative only for resources that cannot be scheduled and where the charge type is neither PO move nor PO receipt.

5. Open the Scheduling alternative region and enter the number of assigned units to the resource. See: Resource Usage: page 4 – 5

6. If the unit of measure of the resource is time-based, select a schedule value. See: Schedule: page 4 – 23.

7. Enter the resource offset percent within this routing.

For example, a value of 50 means that you utilize the resource when the routing is half completed. This value is automatically calculated when you compute the lead time for the assembly.

8. Open the Costing alternative region and enter an activity to perform when you use the resource. Use activities to group resource charges for cost reporting. The default is the activity associated with the resource. See: Defining Activities and Activity Costs, Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide.

9. Indicate whether to charge jobs or schedules based on the standard rate defined for the resource (default).

Off: Use this option if you import charges from an outside labor system and want to record actual costs, or to record the labor rate of an employee.

On: For outside processing resources, if you charge a job and repetitive schedule at the standard rate, Oracle Purchasing computes any purchase price variance and posts it to the rate variance account.

10. Select a charge type. The default is the charge type specified for the resource. See: Charge Type: page 4 – 24.
Rolling Up Costs

From the Routing window, you can perform a single-level cost rollup for the currently-selected routing.

To roll up costs:

1. Navigate to the Cost Rollup window. Do this by choosing Cost Rollup from the Special menu.
2. Enter the cost type.
3. Enter the effective date and time to determine the structure of the bill of material to use in the cost rollup. You can use this to roll up historical and future bill structures using current rates and component costs. The default is the current date and time.
4. Indicate whether to include unimplemented engineering change orders (ECO).
5. Indicate whether to produce the Indented Bill of Material Cost Report, which lists the detailed cost structure by level.
6. Choose OK.
Creating a Standard Operation

Standard operations are commonly used operations you can define as a template for use in defining future routing operations. If you assign the operation code of standard operation in a routing, the standard operation information is copied into the operation you are currently defining. You can then modify the operation information in your new operation.

Prerequisites

- You must define at least one department before you can define a standard operation. See: Defining a Department: page 1 – 11.

To create a standard operation:


2. Enter a unique operation code to identify a standard operation.

3. Enter the department where the operation is performed.

4. Enter the minimum transfer quantity of assemblies to move from this operation to the next.

5. For operations in ATO model or option class routings only, indicate whether the operation is option dependant, that is, whether the operation is dependant on the choice of an optional component. All mandatory components and their related operations appear on the routing for each configuration. The default is enabled. See: Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2.

7. Indicate whether to backflush components on shop floor moves at this operation.

   A backflush transaction automatically pulls Operation pull components from inventory. Work in Process also pulls all Operation pull components at non-backflush operations preceding this operation (through the previous completed backflush operation.)


See Also

Defining a Department: page 1 – 11
Overview of Shop Floor Control, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide
Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
Overview of Bills of Material: page 2 – 2
Defining Activities and Activity Costs, Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide
Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents: page 2 – 20
Viewing Resource Usage

You can view the operations and routings that use a particular resource.

To view resource usage:

1. Navigate to the Resource WhereUsed window.

2. Enter the name of the resource for which to view the operation and routing usage.

3. Enter an effective date. Operation information effective on this date is displayed.

The Resource WhereUsed window contains four alternative regions: Operation Details, Resource Details, Descriptions, and More.

The Operation Details alternative region displays the operation sequence, department, the effective date range, and the routing in which the resource is used.

The Resource Details alternative region displays the resource, the basis type, the usage rate (or amount) and its inverse, and the number of resource units assigned.

The More alternative region displays the resource sequence, the activity for the resource, the scheduling type (Yes, No, Prior, Next), and whether this is an engineering routing.
See Also

Assigning Operation Resources: page 4 – 13
Routings Field Reference

This section describes the use of certain major fields.

Completion Subinventory and Locator Fields

In a routing, you can define the completion subinventory and locator where you store finished assemblies upon completion. When you define a job or repetitive schedule, Work in Process uses these values as the default, and you can change the completion subinventory and locator if necessary. Upon completion of assemblies, the completion subinventory and locator you defined for the job and repetitive schedule is the default, and you can change these values if necessary.

See Also

Overview of Assembly Completions and Returns, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide

Count Point and Autocharge Fields

You can define which operations in a routing record move transactions by defining how resources are consumed at that operation.

The Count Point and Autocharge check boxes work together. In the following discussion, the Count Point and Autocharge check boxes can be set to either on or off. However, you cannot set Count Point on and Autocharge off.

When you move assemblies from an operation with Count Point on / Autocharge on operation to another count point operation set the same way, Work in Process automatically completes all Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operations between them.

To transact a Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operation, you must explicitly move assemblies into and out of that operation. Moving assemblies past a Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operation acts as though the operation did not exist in the routing. This is particularly useful for rework or debug operations that are performed on a portion of the assemblies you process.

If you issue components with a supply type of Operation pull to an assembly at a Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operation,
Work in Process backflushes these components when you move out of the Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operation into a count point operation that allows backflushing. Work in Process never pulls components with a supply type of Assembly pull from Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operations. However, you must turn Backflush on for Count Point off / Autocharge off count point operations. The Backflush field should always be turned on for the last operation in a routing. See: Overview of Shop Floor Control, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide.

In the following example, the routing has five operations. The second and fourth operations are not count points, and you must explicitly move units in and out of the fourth operation if you want to charge the job or repetitive schedule for the consumed resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Sequence</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Count Point</th>
<th>Backflush</th>
<th>Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Assembly 1</td>
<td>Yes–Auto-charge</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Assembly 2</td>
<td>No–Auto-charge</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Painting</td>
<td>Yes–Auto-charge</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>If color and texture do not meet standards, send to Op 40. If job meets standards, send to Op 50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Painting Rework</td>
<td>No–Direct charge</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Sand finish and repaint to meet standards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Packaging</td>
<td>Yes–Auto-charge</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Ship directly to customer site when finished with this operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4 – 4 Count Point Operations (Page 1 of 1)

Count Point off / Autocharge on

Assign this count point to operations that you always perform in a routing, but where you do not want to monitor assembly moves into, out of, and through the operation. For example, choose this count point for non-bottleneck operations that are not labor or time-intensive, such as inspection or minor assembly operations.

Work in Process automatically completes the operation and charges its WIP move resources to your job or schedule when you record a move transaction through or beyond the operation, as with Count Point on / Autocharge on count point operations.
Work in Process does not default the operation, unlike Count Point on / Autocharge on count point operations. You can still record movements into, out of, and through the operation by overriding the default in Work in Process.

**Count Point off / Autocharge off**

Assign this count point to operations that you do not typically perform in a routing. For example, a rework operation that you only perform on occasion. If you choose this count point for an operation, Work in Process does not complete the operation and charge its resources to your job or schedule unless you explicitly record a move transaction into and through the operation.

Work in Process does not default the operation. You can still record movements into, out of, and through the operation by overriding the default in Work in Process.

**Count Point on / Autocharge on**

Assign this count point to operations you want to automatically default as destination operations in the Move Transactions window. You should always assign this count point to the final operation in a routing, to insure that you record move transactions into the operation, and then record completion transactions.

You can automatically complete and charge operations in a routing with this count point. Work in Process automatically completes an operation and charges its WIP Move resources to your job or schedule when you record a move transaction through or beyond the operation.

For operations that you always perform in a routing, you can also monitor assembly moves into, out of, and through the operation. For example, choose this count point for critical, time-intensive, or bottleneck operations.

**See Also**

Overview of Shop Floor Control, *Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide*

Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
Schedule Field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>Include this resource when scheduling an operation from a job or repetitive schedule and calculating manufacturing lead time for the assembly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Do not include scheduling the operation or calculating the lead time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior</td>
<td>Include this resource when scheduling a job or repetitive schedule by backward scheduling the previous operation from the end of this resource. Use this option when setup resources can work in parallel with previous operations. The lead time is calculated the same way Work in Process schedules the job or repetitive schedule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next | Include this resource when scheduling a job or repetitive schedule by forward scheduling the next operation from the start of this resource. Use this option when the teardown of the current operation can overlap with the execution of the next operation. The lead time is calculated the same way Work in Process schedules the job or repetitive schedule.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Op10</th>
<th>R1</th>
<th>R2</th>
<th>R3</th>
<th>R4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Op20</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(R=resource)
Charge Type Field

You can determine how each resource is charged in Work in Process. When an operation completes, Work in Process records the units applied to the job or repetitive schedule in the resource unit of measure. You can charge resources manually or automatically.

- **Manual**
  Work in Process does not automatically charge this type of resource to a job or repetitive schedule. You must manually charge it to a job or repetitive schedule using Work in Process.

- **PO Receipt**
  Automatically charge this resource upon receipt of a purchase order in Oracle Purchasing. The assemblies are not automatically moved to the next operation upon receipt, so you must manually move them using Work in Process.

- **PO Move**
  Automatically charge this resource upon receipt of a purchase order in Oracle Purchasing and move the assemblies to the Queue intraoperation step of the next operation, or to the To move intraoperation step if this is the last operation.

- **WIP Move**
  Work in Process automatically charges this type of resource to a job or repetitive schedule when you complete an operation.
Deleting Information

This chapter tells you everything you need to know to delete item, bill, and routing information, including:

- Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations: page 5 – 2
- Deleting Components and Operations: page 5 – 5
- Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7
Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations

Set up groups of entities to check, delete and optionally archive. Entities can include items, bills of material, components, routings, or operations.

What entities you can delete depends on what Oracle application you are currently using and what applications you have installed.

- if you are using Oracle Bills of Material, you can delete only bills, routings, components, and operations
- if you are using Oracle Engineering, you can delete any engineering entity except ECOs
- if you are using Oracle Inventory and you do not have Bills of Material installed, you can only delete manufacturing items
- if you are using Inventory and you do have Bills of Material installed, you can delete only items, bills, and routings

Deleting physically removes information from the database tables. Deleted bill or routing information can be archived to database tables. (You cannot archive item–level information.) You can then write custom programs to report on the archived data. Summary information is saved for all deletion groups. You can report on deletion groups.

Note: Files or objects that are attached to bills or routings are not deleted. Instead, the link between the bill or routing and the attached file is severed. The files themselves remain intact in their original location.

Several deletion constraints are installed with Bills of Material. However, you can define custom deletion constraints. If what you are attempting to delete does not pass deletion constraints, it is not deleted. For example, you can define a constraint that prevents you from deleting a bill of material for an assembly that has an item status of active.

When you delete an entire bill, you delete all the components for the assembly along with their reference designators and substitute items. When you delete a routing, all operations are deleted. For both bills and routings, any links to attachments are severed.

Oracle Work in Process reflects any changes to the bills or routings using the delete functionality only if you re–explode the bill or routing in Work in Process.
To define a deletion group:

1. Navigate to the Deletion Groups window.

   ![Deletion Groups window](image)

   If you are updating an existing deletion group, the date it was last submitted (if applicable) is displayed.

2. Enter a group name to identify the group of entities to delete.

3. Select what type of entity to delete.

4. Indicate whether to archive the deleted entities in the archive tables.

   **Attention:** You can archive bill and routing information, but not item information. The option to archive is not available if you are deleting only items.

5. Enter the item, bill, or routing to delete, or from which to delete components or operations.

   The Details alternative region displays the organization the entity belongs to, its type, and the alternate (if applicable). The Effectivity alternative region displays the effective date range. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

   The Results alternative region displays the delete status and the date of deletion (if applicable).

6. To delete an alternate bill or routing, enter the alternate.
7. If you are deleting components, choose the Components button; if you are deleting operations, enter the Operations button.

8. When finished, choose either the Delete Group button or the Check Group button.

► To specify components to delete:

1. Navigate to the Components window. Do this by choosing the Components button from the Deletion Groups window.

2. Enter a component item to delete.

   The Results alternative region displays the status as Error, Check OK, or Deleted. A status of Pending indicates the delete program has not run yet. The Effectivity alternative region displays the effective date range of the component. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

   If the status is listed as Error, choose the Error button to review why the deletion failed.

► To specify operations to delete:

1. Navigate to the Operations window. Do this by choosing the Operations button from the Deletion Groups window.

2. Enter the operation sequence to delete.

   The Results alternative region displays the status as Error, Check OK, or Deleted. A status of Pending indicates the delete program has not run yet. The Effectivity alternative region displays the effective date range of the operation. See: Effective Date Fields: page 2 – 35.

   If the status is listed as Error, choose the Error button to review why the deletion failed.

► To check entities for deletion:

Attention: If you perform a check on the item, bill, and routing, the check program will return an Error status for the item. This simply indicates that the item’s bill or routing still exists. In this case, disregard the Error status for the item.

Choose the Check Group button to verify whether any deletion constraints are violated.
The delete concurrent program updates the entity’s status to Error, or Check OK. A status of Pending indicates the delete program has not run yet.

► **To submit entities for deletion:**

- Choose the Delete Group button to submit the delete concurrent program.

The delete concurrent program first performs a check for all the entities listed for deletion. Once the check succeeds, the entities are deleted.

The delete concurrent program updates the entity’s status to Error, Check OK, or Deleted. A status of Pending indicates the delete program has not run yet.

► **To review errors:**

1. Choose the Errors button to see why the entity could not be deleted. Do this from either the Components, Operations, or Delete Groups windows.

2. Choose the View Constraint button or the drill down indicator to see the violated deletion constraint.

**See Also**

Item Deletion, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*

Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7

Creating Custom Deletion Constraints: page 1 – 9

Deleting Components and Operations: page 5 – 5

Delete Items Report: page 9 – 15

**Deleting Components and Operations**

You can delete components from the Bills of Material or operations from the Routings window.

► **To delete components and operations:**

1. Navigate to either the Bills of Material or Routings windows.
2. Do one of the following:
   • If deleting a component, select a component.
   • If deleting an operation, select an operation.

3. Choose either the Delete Record icon, or Delete from the Edit menu.
   The Delete Component or Delete Operation window appears. A default value for the delete group name may appear, depending upon the last entity deleted.

4. Do one of the following:
   • accept the default delete group name
   • select or enter an existing delete group name
   • enter a new delete group name

5. If you are entering a new delete group name, enter a description for the group.

6. Choose OK.

   **Note:** Components and operations are not assigned to the delete group until you save the bill or routing. If you do not save the bill or routing, components and operations are not assigned to the delete group.

**See Also**

Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7
Creating Custom Deletion Constraints: page 1 – 9
Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations: page 5 – 2
Deletion Constraints

Predefined constraints for deleting bills of material or routings are as follows:

- a primary bill if an alternate exists
- a bill if it is used as a common in another bill
- a bill if a repetitive schedule references the bill
- a bill if a discrete job references the bill
- a bill if any sales orders are open for the parent item
- a bill if any demand exists for the parent item
- a model bill if any configuration items exist for the model
- an option class bill if it is a component of another bill
- a primary routing if an alternate exists
- a routing if it is used as a common routing
- a routing if a repetitive schedule references the routing
- a routing if a discrete job references the routing
- a component where the parent item is an option class or model and there is an open sales order for the parent item
- an item, bill, or component that is affected by a pending ECO
- mandatory standard components if there is demand for it

See Also

Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations: page 5–2
Item Deletion, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide
Configure to Order

This chapter tells you everything you need to know to use the configure-to-order features of Oracle Manufacturing, including:

- Overview of Configure to Order: page 6 – 2
- Model and Option Class Bills of Material: page 6 – 5
- Forecast Model / Option Demand: page 6 – 21
- Master Schedule Models and Options: page 6 – 27
- Sales Order Entry: page 6 – 29
- ATP Check: page 6 – 32
- AutoCreate Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders: page 6 – 35
- Final Assembly Order Completion: page 6 – 46
- Pick Release and Ship Configuration Orders: page 6 – 48
- Deactivating Configuration Items: page 6 – 50
Overview of Configure To Order

Oracle Manufacturing enables you to define options available for products and to process orders for unique product configurations while maintaining control of inventory, planning, and cost accounting.
Configure to Order and Pick–to–Order Steps

Process orders for configurations in assemble–to–order (ATO) and pick–to–order (PTO) environments using the following steps:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>#</th>
<th>ATO</th>
<th>PTO</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Define Model and Option Class Bills of Material</td>
<td>Define multilevel model and option class bills to control order entry, master scheduling/MRP, work in process, and costing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Forecast Model/Option Demand</td>
<td>Forecast demand for model, options, or both. Explode forecasts through planning bills to models and/or options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Master Schedule Models and Options</td>
<td>Master schedule ATO models, options, or both.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Enter Sales Order</td>
<td>Enter sales orders for models with options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Check ATP</td>
<td>Perform group ATP check for all supply constrained components to find earliest possible ship date for configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>AutoCreate Configuration Items</td>
<td>Automatically generate new item number, bill, and routing for each new sales order and assign new item to sales order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>AutoCreate Final Assembly Orders</td>
<td>Automatically open discrete job for each new ATO configuration order. Reserve work in process job to sales order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Complete Final Assembly Orders</td>
<td>Complete configuration item to inventory, automatically convert work in process reservation into inventory reservation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Pick Release and Ship Configuration Orders</td>
<td>Pick Release all configuration sales orders for which work in process jobs are completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Deactivate Configuration Items</td>
<td>Deactivate auto–generated configuration item numbers whose orders are complete more than x days ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 1  Configure to Order Steps (Page 1 of 1)
The following diagram illustrates the flow of the steps listed above:

Figure 6 – 1
Overview of Model and Option Class Bills of Material

Oracle Manufacturing enables you to define integrated multilevel bills that contain planning bills, model and option class bills, as well as standard product and subassembly bills. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Planning %</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Training Computer</td>
<td>Planning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Carrying Case</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>DOS Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>DOS Diskettes</td>
<td>Subassembly</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>UNIX Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>UNIX Diskettes</td>
<td>Subassembly</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6-2 Indented Planning Bill of Material (Page 1 of 1)
Planning Bills of Material

In the example below, the Training Computer (at level 1) is a planning item that represents a family of products whose demand you want to forecast by family. The Training Computer planning bill contains three components (at level 2) that are each ATO models. Each component specifies a planning factor that represents the percentage of Training Computer orders that are for that model. All components in the bill for a planning item must have a planning percentage. Planning percentage totals can exceed 100% to over plan.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Planning %</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Training Computer</td>
<td>Planning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Desktop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Server Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–3 Single Level Bill for Training Computer

Optional components of model and option class bills can also have planning factors. Notice that in the example in Table 1–9: page 6–5, the Laptop Computer has a planning percent of 60% and the Operating System option class has a planning percent of 90%. The two options under the option class (DOS and UNIX) have 80% and 20% respectively. If there is a forecast for 100 units of the Training Computer, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP computes the forecasts for DOS and UNIX by exploding the forecast for 100 units considering each planning percent:

\[
\text{DOS forecast} = 100 \times .60 \times .90 \times .80 = 44 \text{ units}
\]

\[
\text{UNIX forecast} = 100 \times .60 \times .90 \times .20 = 11 \text{ units}
\]

See Also

Overview of Bills of Material: page 2–2

Two–Level Master Scheduling, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide
Configure to Order Environments

You can define model and option class bills of material that list the options your customers can choose from when they place a sales order for an assemble to order configuration. To define assemble to order models whose configurations you assemble using manufacturing work orders, you must set the Assemble to Order Item Master field to Yes for the model and option class items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>BOM Item Type</th>
<th>Assemble to Order</th>
<th>Pick Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modem</td>
<td>ATO Item</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 4 Item Attributes for Configure to Order Items (Page 1 of 1)

When you assign an option class item to a model or option class bill of material, the component item (option class) must have the same value for the Assemble to Order Item Master field or Pick Components Item Master field as the parent item (model or option class). So, you can only assign assemble to order option classes to assemble to order models and pick-to-order option classes to pick-to-order models.

You can also define hybrid model bills where you list some options that you pick and some options that you assemble using a final assembly order. When you place an order, your customers can choose the options for the assembled configurations as well as the picked options that ship with the order. For each of these hybrid model bills, you set the Pick Components Item Master field to Yes for the top model item and assign assemble to order model items as components (where the Assemble to Order Item Master field is Yes). So the components of a PTO model can include ATO models as well as PTO option classes and included items. Also, an option under a PTO model or option class can be a standard ATO item that requires a manufacturing work order to assemble it, but unlike the ATO model, has no options.

Model Bills of Material

A model bill lists the option classes, options, and standard items that exist for a model. The bill of material for a PTO model lists the option classes, options, and included items that exist for that model. For example, the Promotional Laptop is a model where you have both picked and assembled components. The single level bill under the
Promotional Laptop contains one option, one option class and two included items. Both the Accessories option class and Diskettes are optional, and you can choose any number of options under the Accessories option class. The included items, Battery Pack and Laptop Computer, are not optional in the bill.

The single level bill under the Laptop Computer contains two mandatory components and three option classes. The mandatory components, Computer Case and Keyboard, are standard items that are not optional in the bill. CPU and Monitor are mandatory option classes since they are not optional, while Operating System is an optional option class. You must choose at least one option under mandatory option classes. CPU and Operating System option classes are mutually exclusive which means you can only choose a single option under each. You can choose any number of Monitors however.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Planning %</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Promotional Laptop</td>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>. Battery Pack</td>
<td>Kit</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>. Accessories</td>
<td>PTO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>. Diskettes</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>. Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>. Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td></td>
<td>60%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>. Carrying Case</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>. Keyboard</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>. CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>. Monitor</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>. Operating System</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 5 Single Level Bill for Laptop Computer

When you place an order for the Promotional Laptop, you choose from the list of options (Diskettes, Accessories options) and from the list of options under the Laptop Computer bill of material, such as DOS, VGA1 and 386 Processor. As described earlier, you open a work order for the Laptop Computer configuration.

Order Entry then includes the completed Laptop Computer configuration on the sales order pick slip for the Promotional
Computer configuration, along with any other chosen options and included items. See: Mutually Exclusive and Optional: page 2 – 38.

Option Class Bills of Material

Option class bills can contain standard components, options, as well as other option classes. Oracle Manufacturing lets you structure any number of levels of option classes within option classes so you can create an indented hierarchy of choices. You can also specify a mandatory component under any option class in the indented structure that would automatically be included anytime you choose an option from that option class (or a lower level option class).

In the example below, the indented Promotional Computer (exploded to three levels) contains one option class at level 2 (Accessories) and three option classes (CPU, Monitor, and Operating System) in its structure at level three. The Accessories option class has one included item (Peripherals Guide) and three options, Mouse, LaserPrinter, and Scanner. When you place an order for the Promotional Laptop, you can choose as many options as you like (or no options) from the Accessories option class. If you choose at least one option, you automatically include the Peripherals Guide for the order.

The Laptop Computer bill contains three option classes at level 3 and the Monitor option class has two option classes (VGA and EGA) in its structure at level 4. The Monitor option class has a mandatory component (Monitor Manual) that is included for any monitor choice. The VGA option class has a mandatory component (VGA Manual) that is included if you choose VGA1 or VGA2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Planning %</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Promotional Laptop</td>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Battery Pack</td>
<td>Kit</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Accessories</td>
<td>PTO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Diskettes</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–6 Indented Bill of Material for Laptop Computer (Page 1 of 2)
## Standard Bills of Material

Standard bills are bills of material for manufactured products, kits, subassemblies, phantoms, or purchased assemblies. Standard bills appear at the bottom levels of the indented structure.

In the example below, the DOS option in the model bill for the Laptop Computer is a phantom item whose bill contains DOS Manual and DOS Diskettes. Each time you order a Laptop Computer and choose the DOS option, your final assembly order requires DOS Diskettes and DOS Manual. Oracle Work in Process automatically explodes the requirement for DOS to its components, DOS Diskettes and DOS Manual, since the DOS option is a phantom item. DOS Diskettes is a subassembly, so it also has a standard bill of material although it is not shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Planning %</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>. . 3</td>
<td>. Monitor</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>. . VGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>. . . VGA Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>. . . VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>. . . VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>. . EGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>. . . EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>. . . EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>. . Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 3</td>
<td>. . Operating System</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>. . DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>. . UNIX</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 6 Indented Bill of Material for Laptop Computer (Page 2 of 2)
Option Quantity Ranges

For each option, you can specify a quantity range that limits the quantity of the option you can order during Order Entry. In the example below, you can order only one CPU and Operating System but you can order up to 10 VGA1 or VGA2 monitors and up to 20 EGA1 or EGA2 monitors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Supply Type</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>. . . 4</td>
<td>. . . DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . 5</td>
<td>. . . DOS Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Assembly Pull</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . . 5</td>
<td>. . . DOS Diskettes</td>
<td>Subassembly</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Assembly Pull</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–7 Standard Bill of Material (Page 2 of 2)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Min Qty</th>
<th>Max Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Promotional Laptop</td>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Battery Pack</td>
<td>Kit</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Recharger</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. 12Hour Battery</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Accessories</td>
<td>PTO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Mouse</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. LaserPrinter</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Scanner</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Peripherals Guide</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Diskettes</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. . Monitor</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . VGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. . . VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. . . VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–8 Option Quantity Ranges for Laptop Computer (Page 1 of 1)

**Basis Option Class**

You can define a basis of option class for PTO Option Class items. This means Order Entry prevents you from modifying the extended order quantity of the option class item. You can still modify the extended quantity of the options below the PTO Option Class.

In the example below, basis is set to Option Class for the Accessories option class item, and the extended order quantity for the option class is 3. You cannot modify the extended order quantity for the Accessories option class. You can, however, modify the extended order quantity for any of the options below the accessories option class (Mouse, LaserPrinter, and Scanner). The Peripherals Guide included
item’s extended quantity is based on the extended order quantity of the option class, so this quantity cannot be changed by modifying the accessories option class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Basis</th>
<th>Qty Ordered</th>
<th>Extend Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Promotional Laptop</td>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Accessories</td>
<td>PTO Option Class</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Mouse</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. LaserPrinter</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Scanner</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Peripherals Guide</td>
<td>Included Item</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ATP Check Controls**

Oracle Manufacturing lets you specify the components in model and option class bills of material for which you want to check Available to Promise before scheduling a ship date for a configuration. Oracle Manufacturing lets you specify for each item in the item master whether you must check ATP for that item itself and whether the item has bill of material components that require an ATP check.

For example, you might need to check ATP for the keyboard and CPU each time you order a Laptop Computer configuration but the supply of all other components is not constrained. In that case, you would set the ATP Components Item Master field to Yes for the Laptop Computer and the CPU option class, and you would set the Check ATP Item Master field to Yes for the Keyboard and CPUs. That way, when you order a Laptop Computer and choose a 486 Processor, Oracle Order Entry performs an ATP check for each component in the Laptop Computer bill where Check Component ATP is set to Yes (Keyboard only) and it would check ATP for the 486 Processor since that option was selected.

**Note:** If the Check ATP item master field is set to Yes, you can change this value when you create a bill of material. If the Check ATP is set to No, it cannot be updated when you create the bill.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Check ATP</th>
<th>ATP Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Promotional Laptop</td>
<td>PTO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Battery Pack</td>
<td>Kit</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Recharger</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. 12Hour Battery</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Accessories</td>
<td>PTO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Mouse</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. LaserPrinter</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Scanner</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Peripherals Guide</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Diskettes</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Carrying Case</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. Keyboard</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>.. CPU</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. . 486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–9 ATP Checks for Laptop Computer  (Page 1 of 1)

ATP calculation can also be done for a product family. A product family calculation takes into account demand and supply for individual items that are members of the product family.

Oracle Manufacturing supports multiple levels of ATP check components. For example, a standard component of a model could contain a phantom item with ATP check components in its bill. In that case, you would set the ATP Components Item Master field to Yes for both the model and the phantom item. That way, Order Entry knows to continue exploding the bill through the phantom item looking for components to include in the group ATP check for the configuration.

**MultiOrganization Bills of Material**

You can enter sales orders for assemble to order configurations in your item master organization and build the configurations in other
organizations. Using common bills of material, you can share model and option class bills of material between organizations. You define the model and option class bills in the manufacturing organization that owns each bill, creating common bills in your item master organization (and other manufacturing organizations) to reference the bill in the manufacturing organization.

For example, you can enter orders for the Laptop Computer in your item master organization (Global Computers) and build the Laptop Computer in two other organizations—Sacramento and Austin. And, all engineering changes to the Laptop Computer (and its components) originate from the Sacramento organization. You define the Laptop Computer model item in your item master organization (Global Computers) and assign the item to the Sacramento and Austin organizations. Then you can define the Laptop Computer’s model bill of material in the Sacramento organization, creating common bills of material in the Global Computers and Austin organizations. Each common bill references the model bill in the Sacramento organization. For each component that has its own bill of material (option class and standard items), you define the component’s bill in the Sacramento organization and create common bills in the Global Computers and Austin organizations (where each common bill references a bill in the Sacramento organization).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Alternate</th>
<th>Common Bill Details</th>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Alternate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sacramento</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Computers</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Sacramento</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austin</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Sacramento</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 10 Shared Bills of Material for Laptop Computer (Page 1 of 1)

**Option Dependent Routing Steps**

Oracle Bills of Materials lets you define routing steps for models that can be selected as options for configurations. You can specify that a routing step is option dependent which causes the configuration to include that routing step only if an option referencing that step was chosen.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Carrying Case</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>ATO Option Class</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–11 Indented Bill of Material for Laptop Computer (Page 1 of 1)
### Operation Sequence Inheritance

In the example above, Oracle Manufacturing automatically includes Operation Sequence 25 in any configuration containing a 486 processor since the 486 processor option in the bill references step 25. This routing step can also add to the standard cost for configurations with the 486 Processor, since Oracle Manufacturing performs a single level rollup for configurations and accounts for all costed resources used in the configuration routing.

The routing for your model should include all steps that any configuration might require. You can then establish option class routings by referencing the model routing as a common routing. That way, lower level options can still reference the model’s routing. For example, you can reference the Laptop Computer’s routing as a common routing for the CPU option class, referencing the Laptop Computer’s routing steps in the option class bill.

### Operation Sequence Inheritance

You can specify that items within the model structure inherit the operation sequence from their parent option class or model. You invoke this option by setting the site level profile BOM: Inherit Option Class Operation Sequence Number to yes. Bills of Material applies inheritance logic for all items in the model structure with an operation sequence defaulted to 1. You should maintain a routing for the top level model, but may not need to maintain a routing for any option class or model where all items below it have an operation sequence of 1.

In the example below, the profile option is set to yes, and the CPU and Monitor option class items have operation sequence numbers for the Laptop Computer routing. The processor options are defaulted to an

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Option Dependent</th>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Operation Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Casing</td>
<td>Cut and smooth case edges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Assembly 1</td>
<td>Attach keyboard and cable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Assembly 2</td>
<td>Clean processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Assembly 2</td>
<td>Insert processor into board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Assembly 3</td>
<td>Attach monitor cable/glare screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Packaging</td>
<td>Wrap OS kit with power supply</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 12 Routing Steps for Laptop Computer (Page 1 of 1)
operation sequence of 1, and inherit operation sequence 30 from the CPU option class item. The VGA Option class, options and included item are defaulted to an operation sequence of 1, and inherit operation sequence 40 from the manual option class item. Routings are not required for the CPU, Monitor, and VGA option classes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Operation Sequence Inherited</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Retains 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Retains 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>Included Item</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Option</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Inherits 40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cataloging Configurations

Oracle Manufacturing provides features that help you catalog your assemble to order configurations so you can easily find on hand configurations that meet customer requirements, or find configuration item numbers that were used to fulfill previous orders for the same configuration. Oracle Manufacturing lets you set up rules to automatically assign Item Catalog descriptive element values to assemble to order configurations based on the options selected.

For example, you might want to catalog computer configurations using descriptive elements that indicate the Processor Type, Monitor Type, and Operating System chosen for each configuration. You could then assign the Laptop Computer model item to a catalog group that specifies those descriptive elements, but not assign any values to those attributes since the Laptop Computer is a model, not a specific configuration. You would also assign each option item to a catalog group with descriptive elements that describe that option. So you would assign the processor option items (386,486) to a “Processors” catalog group containing a Processor descriptive element as well as others that might describe more specific processor attributes.
## Table 6–13 Catalog and Descriptive Elements  (Page 1 of 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Catalog Group</th>
<th>Descriptive Element Name</th>
<th>Descriptive Element Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Personal Computers</td>
<td>Processor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Processors</td>
<td>Processor</td>
<td>Slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Processors</td>
<td>Processor</td>
<td>Fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>VGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>VGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>EGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>EGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Operating Systems</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>MS–DOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Operating Systems</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>SCO–Unix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You would also specify which descriptive elements to assign automatically to an ordered configuration, based on options chosen under each option class in the Laptop Computer’s bill. For example, when you defined the bill for the CPU option class, you would specify that the Processor descriptive element should be assigned automatically based on options chosen under this class. The Bills of Material window lets you specify descriptive elements for each model or option class bill of material. If you want the autocreate configuration items process to concatenate descriptions, you must specify descriptive elements for each model and option class bill. An example of a concatenated description might be “486–VGA–DOS”.

## Table 6–14 Descriptive Elements for Bills of Material  (Page 1 of 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Element Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>OS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See Also

Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*
Overview of Bills of Material: page 2 – 2
On–hand and Availability, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*
Scheduling Orders: *Oracle Order Entry Reference Manual, Release 10*
Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
Forecast Model / Option Demand

Establishing the Production Forecast

Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP lets you define and maintain forecasts for any item, at any level on your bills of material. You can forecast demand for products directly, or forecast product families and explode forecasts to individual products through planning bills. You can directly forecast demand for option classes, options, and mandatory components. You can also explode forecasts for models and option classes, through model and option class bills, to selected option classes, options, and mandatory components.

Forecast Control

Use the Forecast Control item attribute to tell Master Scheduling/MRP the types of demand that you place for models, option classes, options, and mandatory components. Master Scheduling/MRP uses the Forecast Control value you assign to each assemble-to-order and pick-to-order item when forecasting and master scheduling models and options.

Independent Forecast Demand

Independent forecast demand is demand that you place for an item by directly entering forecasts for the item, rather than exploding forecast to the item.

If you forecast demand directly for an item, then set Forecast Control to Consume.

Exploded Forecast Demand

The forecast explosion process generates the “exploded forecast demand” for an item by collecting the forecasted demand for all the components in the item’s bill of material. You typically generate exploded forecast demand for items, such as option classes and options, whose demand is directly related to or derived from the bill of material structure for other items.

If you forecast demand for an item by exploding demand from a higher level item in a bill of material, then set Forecast Control to Consume and derive.

If you forecast demand for an item directly, and explode forecast demand to the item, then set Forecast Control to Consume and derive.
Sales Order Demand

Sales order demand is demand that you place when your customers order configurations. As your customers order configurations, Order Entry can automatically place sales order demand for each model, option class, and option selected by your customer when they place the order.

If you place sales order demand for an item, but do not forecast the item, then set Forecast Control to None.

Derived Sales Order Demand

Under normal circumstances, Order Entry does not place sales order demand for mandatory components when your customers order configurations.

You can set the Forecast Control attribute to Consume or Consume and derive to automatically place demand and consume forecasts for mandatory components when you place sales orders demand for configurations that include the mandatory components.

If you forecast demand for a mandatory component, either directly or through forecast explosion, then set Forecast Control to Consume or Consume and derive.

Forecast Explosion

Forecast explosion is the process that explodes forecasts for planning items, models, product families and option classes to selected components on your planning, model, product family and option class bills. Forecast explosion calculates exploded forecast quantities by extending parent forecast quantities using the component usages and planning percents defined on your planning, model, and option class bills.

A product family can be exploded to dependent quantity explosion for those members that have a forecast control of Consume and derive. This explosion is based on the product family allocation percentage in relation to the existing sales order quantity. You can associate alternate bills of material to multiple forecasts for the same item. This lets you explode the same forecast using different components, usages, and planning percents.

You explode forecasts, using the Load Forecasts or Load Master Schedules forms, by choosing the Explode Forecasts option when loading a forecast into another forecast or a master schedule.
The following table shows how forecast explosion explodes a forecast for 100 Laptop computers. Notice that forecast is only exploded to items where you have set Forecast Control to Consume and derive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>BOM Item Type</th>
<th>Forecast Control</th>
<th>Optio nal</th>
<th>Plan %</th>
<th>Forecast/ Sales Order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Consume</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Carrying Case</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 15 Forecast Explosion Example (Page 1 of 2)
Forecast Consumption

Forecast consumption is the process that replaces forecast demand with sales order demand. Each time you place a sales order, you create actual demand. If the actual demand is forecasted, then you typically want to reduce the forecast demand by the sales order quantity to avoid overstatesing demand.

Master Scheduling/MRP automatically consumes forecasts for configurations, models, product families, option classes, and options when you place sales order demand for configurations.

Forecast consumption for product families behaves the same as forecast consumption for models. A sales order for a family member will consume forecasts for the member item as well as forecasts for the entire family.

**Attention:** Under normal circumstances, no sales order demand is placed for mandatory components. You can generate derived sales order demand for selected mandatory components, since forecast consumption generates derived sales order demand for all items where you have set Forecast Control to Consume or Consume and derive. This lets you define and maintain forecasts for key mandatory components as well as models, option classes, and options.

The following table shows how forecast consumption consumes the exploded forecast for 100 Laptop Computers when a customer places a sales order for 10 Laptop Computers with 486 processors, VGA1 monitors, and DOS operating system. Notice that forecast consumption generates and consumes derived sales order demand for each mandatory component where you have set Forecast Control to Consume or Consume and derive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>BOM Item Type</th>
<th>Forecast Control</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Plan %</th>
<th>Forecast/ Sales Order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Model</td>
<td>Consume</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Carrying Case</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 16 Forecast Consumption Example
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>BOM Item Type</th>
<th>Forecast Control</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Plan %</th>
<th>Forecast/ Sales Order</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>62 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>Consume and derive</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–16 Forecast Consumption Example

See Also

Two-Level Master Scheduling, *Oracle MRP/Master Scheduling User’s Guide*
Master Schedule Models and Options

Master Scheduling/MRP lets you master schedule any planned item, anywhere on your bills of material, including models, option classes, options, product families and mandatory components. You can create master production schedules to load forecasts and sales orders into a master demand schedule. You can then use the master demand schedule to drive the planning process. Identify your master production schedules as visible to the Oracle Inventory available-to-promise (ATP) process, so that Order Entry can check ATP information for your key subassemblies when scheduling sales orders for configurations. The shipment and production reliefs for product families prevents the duplication of supply/demand and keeps the supply/demand for the product family in sync with those of the member items.

Production Relief

Production relief, also known as MPS relief, is the process that replaces planned supply with actual supply when you create a work order to build a manufactured item, or when you create a purchase requisition to buy a purchased item. Each time you create a work order or purchase requisition, you create actual supply. If the actual supply is planned, then you typically want to reduce the planned supply by the work order or purchase requisition quantity to avoid overstating supply. When a purchase order, purchase requisition or discrete job is created for a member of a product family, the MPS is relieved for the member items as well as the product family.

Production relief relieves your master production schedules for any phantom item when you create a work order for the phantom’s parent. Since models and option classes are created as phantoms on the configuration item bill, Master Scheduling/MRP automatically relieves your master production schedules for models and option classes when you create a final assembly order for a configuration. Production relief relieves your master production schedules for options and mandatory components when you create work orders for them.

Shipment Relief

Shipment relief, also known as MDS relief, is the process that reduces anticipated demand when you ship product that satisfies a sales order. Each time you ship a product to a customer, you satisfy demand. If the demand is included on your master demand schedules, then you
typically want to reduce the anticipated demand by the sales order quantity to avoid overstating demand.

Master Scheduling/MRP automatically relieves master demand schedules when you ship a sales order for a configuration. If you have not reloaded your master demand schedule after the AutoCreate Configuration process, there is be no master demand schedule for the configuration item. When there is no master demand schedule for the configuration item, shipment relief explodes the configuration bill and relieves master demand schedules for each model and option class on the bill. Shipment relief also relieves master demand schedules for each standard item where you have set Forecast Control to Consume or Consume & Derive. If you ship a sales order for a member of a product family, sales order shipment relieves the master demand schedule for member items as well as the product family. If you have reloaded your master demand schedule since the AutoCreate Configuration process, shipment relief finds and relieves master demand schedules for the configuration item only.

See Also

Two–Level Master Scheduling, Oracle MRP/Master Scheduling User’s Guide
## Sales Order Entry

Order Entry supports ordering Pick-to-Order configurations where you pick and ship options from stock, and Assemble to Order configurations where you use a work order to build configurations before you ship them.

The entire indented list of option classes and options from which to choose from is displayed. Specify one of the Select options next to your choices to take the default quantity; you can choose all options within an option class (if it is not mutually exclusive) or bill, you can override quantities within the allowed range, or you can use new navigation choices to move quickly to a specific option class.

### Table 6–17 Configuration Selection (Page 1 of 1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>.486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>.VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>.DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can select individual options for the model from all available options, displayed as an indented bill of material. Each option is displayed as it is selected. Classes are automatically added as options within the classes are selected.

Order Entry prevents users from violating mutually exclusive and mandatory option class rules when the order is booked. If an option
class is mutually exclusive then only one choice is allowed. If an option class is mandatory (not optional), then at least one choice is required. See: Mutually Exclusive and Optional: page 2 – 38.

Match and Reserve

Match and Reserve ATO Configurations allow you to check for an existing matching configuration and reserve against it. While entering an order you can search for matching active ATO configurations and associated available-to-transact quantities based on the options selected for the entered order line. To select a matching configuration the following criteria must be met:

• The order must be booked
• The order line cannot have an associated configuration item assigned
• The profile option BOM: Check for Duplicate Configurations must be set to Match and Reserve

See: Match and Reserve ATO Items, Oracle Product Configurator User’s Guide

Pricing Configurations

Order Entry automatically prices your configurations as they are entered. You can price the model and individual options, or price only the model or options. As you select the options for your configuration, Order Entry displays the cumulative total for the configuration.

Order Processing Cycles

Order Entry uses order cycles to process your orders. Cycles include actions, such as Enter, Pick Release, and Close to identify the required actions for the order, and results, such as Booked, Released, and Closed to indicate the condition of an order or order line. The Manufacturing Release cycle action monitors the progress of Assemble to Order items and configurations through the manufacturing process. This action identifies when the order line is released to manufacturing; when the ATO configured item has been created (Configuration Created); when the work order has been opened (Work Order Opened); when some portion of the work order quantity is complete (Work Order Partially Completed); and when the total quantity of the work order is complete (Work Order Completed). You can see the actions and results for any order or order line.
Assemble–to–order (ATO) configurations are treated like ship–together models. Additionally, even though the assembled configuration item is associated only with the ATO model order line, the status of each associated order line is updated identically and simultaneously as the configuration is pick released, ship confirmed, and interfaced to Inventory or Receivables. See: Linking ATO Configurations, Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User’s Guide.

See Also

Overview of Sales Orders, Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User’s Guide
Viewing Orders and Returns, Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User’s Guide
ATP Check

Order Entry lets you promise ship dates for configurations based on Available–to–Promise information for key components. You can check Available–to–Promise for an individual item, an entire configuration, a ship set or an entire order.

You can specify for each item in a model or option class bill whether Order Entry must perform an ATP check before scheduling a ship date for that item using the Check ATP Bill of Material attribute for the orderable items in the bill and the Check ATP item attribute for all standard components. The ATP Components item attribute indicates whether an item contains components in its structure that also require an ATP check.

*Note:* If the Check ATP item master field is set to Yes, you can change this value when you create a bill of material. If the Check ATP is set to No, it cannot be updated when you create the bill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select Code</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>ATP Components</th>
<th>Check ATP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td>. Laptop Computer</td>
<td>ATO Model</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Carrying Case</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Keyboard</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. 386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. 486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.3</td>
<td>. Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. VGA Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>. EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.4</td>
<td>. Monitor Manual</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 18  ATP Check  (Page 1 of 2)
You would set item attributes per the above table if you wanted to promise ship dates for Laptop Computers based on the available supply of keyboards, processors, and monitor manuals, but the supply for other components was not constrained.

If you ordered a Laptop Computer with a 486 processor, VGA1 monitor, and DOS operating system and requested a shipment on 2/5, Order Entry would offset that ship date to compute a requested availability date for components and then perform a group ATP check for all Check ATP components simultaneously.

The table below illustrates sample results of a group ATP check. It includes all components from the previous table that would be included in the selected configuration and whose Check ATP attribute is Yes. In this case, the requested date for components is offset to 2/1, four days before the requested ship date. The group ATP check found that the Keyboard is the latest available component, so the ship date for the entire configuration would be set to 2/3 plus the four day offset for manufacturing lead time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Qty</th>
<th>Requested Date</th>
<th>ATP Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>. . 3</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>2/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>1/28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 5</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>2/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . 4</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>2/1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oracle Inventory lets you define different ATP rules for different items, depending on how you manage your inventory. You can promise ship
dates from master schedules, discrete jobs, repetitive schedules, purchase orders, on-hand inventory, or any combination. And, you can specify rules to control ATP netting to match your order promising policies.
AutoCreate Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders

**Note:** The functions documented here are for use in ATO environments only.

Once you have entered and scheduled a sales order for an assemble–to–order model, Bills of Material automatically defines a new, unique configuration item complete with a bill of material and routing (based on the model bill and routing) that you can manufacture to fulfill the sales order. When Bills of Material creates a configuration item for a sales order, it links the new configuration item to the sales order such that Order Entry ships the new item to fulfill the order.

Once a configuration item has been linked to a sales order, you can open a Final Assembly Order to build the configuration. Work in Process lets you reserve discrete jobs to sales orders manually, or you can use the AutoCreate Final Assembly Orders concurrent program to automatically open and reserve a work in process discrete job for each configuration sales order.

Configuration Items

**AutoCreate by Release Date**

When you start the AutoCreate Configuration Items concurrent program, you can specify Release Offset Days to help you minimize the impact of order changes on the planning process. By entering the Release Offset Days, you can create configuration items only for sales orders whose work order must be released within that number of days. In other words, if you specify Release Offset Days = 2, then you only create configuration items for orders whose work order must begin within two days.

The AutoCreate Configuration Item process searches your new orders, finds your orders for assemble–to–order models, and assigns an estimated work order release date to these order lines. Oracle Manufacturing computes the estimated work order release date by offsetting the scheduled ship date by the order lead time (through the workday calendar). Using the lead time information for the model item (as specified in the item master), Oracle Manufacturing calculates order lead time as follows:

\[
\text{fixed lead time} + (\text{quantity} \times \text{variable lead time})
\]
After assigning the estimated work order release dates to the new orders, the AutoCreate Configuration Item process finds all orders whose work order release date is within the Release Offset Days you specified and automatically creates configuration items for those orders.

For example, the table below describes the results if you placed an order for the Laptop Computer with the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection Code</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item Type</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
<th>Qty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. 386 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes . 486 Processor</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. VGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes . . VGA1</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . VGA2</td>
<td>Purchased Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. EGA</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . EGA1</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. . EGA2</td>
<td>Product</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Option Class</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes . DOS</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>. UNIX</td>
<td>Phantom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 20  AutoCreate Configuration Item  (Page 1 of 1)

Bills of Material automatically defines a new, unique configuration item in the item master and assigns a bill of material and routing. Tables in the next few pages show the single level bill and routing that would be assigned to the new configuration item.

**See Also**

Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2
Item Numbering Methods

You can choose from three methods to automatically assign item numbers to configuration items:

- Replace model item number with a sequence number
- Replace model item number with the order number/line number
- Append a sequence to the model number

For each method, you can specify which segment of the item flexfield you want to either append or replace. For the Order number/line number method, you can specify a delimiter to separate order number and line number.

For example, the following table illustrates the item numbers that would be created for different sales orders and different model item numbers. In this example, you have a two segment item flexfield with ‘~’ as the delimiter, you have chosen ‘/’ as the order number/line number delimiter, the sales order number is 123, the line number is 21, and the next available sequence number is 2001.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Numbering Segment</th>
<th>Model Item Number</th>
<th>Configuration Item Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Append with Sequence</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>Computer–002001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace with Sequence</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>Computer–2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace with order # / line #</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>Computer–123/21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Append with Sequence</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>Computer–2001–00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace with Sequence</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>2001–00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace with order # / line #</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Computer–00</td>
<td>123/21–00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 21 Assign Item Numbers (Page 1 of 1)

See Also

Defining Bills of Material Parameters: page 1 – 7

Single Level Bill of Material

Bills of Material creates the new configuration item and then assigns a single level bill of material with the following components:
• Options from the sales order
• Mandatory components of the model and any option class that was included on the sales order
• The Model and each Option Class included on the sales order.

The model and option classes appear on configuration bills as phantom components only to consume forecast and to consume master schedules. Material Requirements Planning and Work In Process do not use them since all mandatory components from the model and option classes are also included directly on the single level bill. If you do not forecast or master schedule options and option classes, they perform no function on configuration bills, but they are still included automatically.

For example, the single level bill for the Laptop Computer configuration that was ordered in the example would include the Computer Case and Keyboard because they are mandatory components for the model, the 486 processor, the VGA1 monitor, and DOS since they are options that were explicitly chosen. It would also include VGA Manual and Monitor Manual since they are mandatory components of the VGA option class and the Monitor option class respectively. And, it would include the Laptop Computer model itself plus the CPU, Monitor, VGA, and Operating System option classes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Item Sequence</th>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>Mutually Exclusive</th>
<th>Component Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Computer Case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>CPU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>486 Processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>VGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>VGA-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>VGA Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Monitor Manual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 22 Single Level Bill of Material (Page 1 of 2)
Bills of Material assigns each component to the operation sequence and the item sequence from its original bill. For example, the 486 processor is item sequence 20 in the CPU option class bill and it references operation 25 in that bill.

**See Also**

Overview of Bills of Material: page 2 – 2

**Configuration Item Routings**

Bills of Material automatically assigns a routing to each configuration item by copying the model routing and then dropping any option dependent routing steps for which no component exists that references that step. Each routing step it includes has the Option Dependent operation field set to No, since the new item is a mandatory item with no options in its bill. The routing for the Laptop Computer configuration includes step 25 to Clean processor since the 486 processor was chosen which referenced step 25. Since step 25 is Option Dependent in the model routing, it would have been dropped if you had not chosen the 486 processor option.
See Also

Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2

Cost Rollup

Bills of Material automatically performs a single level cost rollup for each new configuration item to establish accurate standard costs. The Laptop Computer configuration in the example would get a frozen standard cost equal to the sum of the costs of the components in its single level bill, any resource costs in its routing, plus any material overhead. Each new configuration item automatically inherits the material overheads of the model on which it is based.

Configuration items do not pick up any cost from models or option classes in their single level bill. Models and option classes are only considered by forecast consumption and master schedule relief functions.

Lead Time Calculation Option

Bills of Material lets you optionally compute the manufacturing and cumulative lead times for each new configuration item to establish accurate lead times based only on the options chosen.

For example, the AutoCreate Configuration Item concurrent program could automatically compute fixed and variable lead times for the Laptop Computer configuration based on the routing steps that were included from the model routing. In this case, the Clean Processor step would contribute to the lead time. So, if the Clean Processor step included one hour of setup time, then it would contribute one hour to the fixed lead time for the configuration.
Note: When your model’s routings has no option dependent routing steps (or has a minimum amount of time spent at option dependent steps), you can choose not to calculate lead times for each configuration item. Oracle Manufacturing automatically assigns the model item’s lead time information to the new configuration item when you do not specify to calculate lead times for the configuration item.

See Also

Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2

Configuration Item Catalog

Bills of Materials helps you catalog your configurations so you can easily search for a pre-existing configuration item definitions, or on hand configurations.

The AutoCreate Configuration Item concurrent program automatically assigns the new configuration item to the same Item Catalog Group as the model and assigns catalog descriptive element values based on the options chosen, depending on how you setup your item catalog and model and option class bills. And, you can specify that certain catalog descriptive elements should become part of the configuration item’s description.

For example, you could define item catalog groups for personal computers, processors, monitors, and operating systems and assign descriptive elements to each that represent key characteristics of items in that group. The Personal Computers catalog group might have all descriptive elements while the catalog groups for the main components of a personal computer would have only the element that applies to that type of component.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalog Group</th>
<th>Element Name</th>
<th>Include in Item Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Personal Computers</td>
<td>Processor Type</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processors</td>
<td>Processor Type</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6 – 24 Catalog Groups (Page 1 of 2)
You could assign the Laptop Computer model and its options to catalog groups and assign elements as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Catalog Group</th>
<th>Element Name</th>
<th>Element Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laptop Computer</td>
<td>Personal Computers</td>
<td>Processor Type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386 Processor</td>
<td>Processors</td>
<td>Processor Type</td>
<td>Slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>486 Processor</td>
<td>Processors</td>
<td>Processor Type</td>
<td>Fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA1</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>VGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA2</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>VGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA1</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>EGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGA2</td>
<td>Monitors</td>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>EGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Operating Systems</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>MS–DOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIX</td>
<td>Operating Systems</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>SCO–Unix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6–25 Catalog Groups for model item (Page 1 of 1)

When you define the bill of material for models and option classes, you can specify a list of descriptive elements that the AutoCreate Configuration Item program should assign automatically to the configuration item. In this example, when you define the bill for the CPU, VGA, EGA, and Operating System option classes, you would specify a single descriptive element for each option class as shown in the table below:
Table 6 – 26 Specify Descriptive Elements (Page 1 of 1)

In the example where you order a Laptop Computer with a VGA1 monitor, and 486 processor, and a DOS operating system, Bills of Material would automatically assign the following values to descriptive elements:

Table 6 – 27 Assign Descriptive Elements (Page 1 of 1)

Since the Personal Computers catalog group specifies that each of the three descriptive elements should be included in the item description, Bills of Material would automatically assign the description “Fast–VGA–MS–DOS” to the configuration item.

See Also

Overview of Item Catalogs, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*

Searching for Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*

Existing Configuration Item Numbers

The AutoCreate Configuration Item program does not contain features to search for existing configuration items. It always creates a new configuration item for each order. Your MIS department can, however, write a PL/SQL program to search for matching configurations and directly insert it into the AutoCreate Configuration Item PL/SQL.
package. If you set the profile option BOM: Check for Duplicate Configuration to Yes, then the AutoCreate Configuration Item process calls this custom procedure before creating new configuration items. If that procedure returns an item number, AutoCreate Configuration Item links that configuration item to the sales order instead of creating a new configuration item.

The AutoCreate Configuration Item program does, however, search for multiple new orders for duplicate configurations. If the program finds multiple orders for the same configuration, it creates one new configuration item and links it to each order.

AutoCreate Final Assembly Orders

Note: The function documented here is for use in ATO environments only.

You can automatically create discrete jobs for configurations that you must begin assembling within the number of days you specify. Work in Process offsets the scheduled ship date for each configuration item ordered through the workday calendar. Work in Process uses the fixed and variable lead time for the configuration item to compute a work order release date for each sales order and loads discrete jobs for sales orders whose release date is within the number of days you specify. You can minimize the impact of sales order changes by delaying the work in process job components requirements explosion as long as possible.

Manually Create Final Assembly Orders

You can also manually reserve multiple final assembly orders to a single sales order or reserve the same final assembly order to several sales orders using Work in Process. You can view and report final assembly orders that reference sales orders.

See Also

AutoCreating Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders: page 6 – 45
Overview of Discrete Manufacturing, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide
AutoCreating Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders

**Note:** The function documented here is for use in ATO environments only.

Create unique configuration items complete with bills of material and routings (based on the model bill and routing) to fulfill customer orders for manufactured configurations. A single-level cost rollup is performed for each new configuration to establish accurate standard costs that are posted to cost of goods sold. See: AutoCreate Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders: page 6 – 35.

Canned Configurations must exist to successfully use the Match and Reserve functionality. Canned configurations are created when the AutoCreate Configuration process is run. This process will run each time an ATO model line is entered.

**Attention:** Canned configurations will only be created if the profile option BOM: Check for Duplicate Configurations is set to Match and Reserve.

**To autocode configuration items and final assembly orders:**

2. To autocode a configuration item based on an order number, enter the order number. Otherwise skip the Sales Order Number field.
3. If you chose not to enter an order number, enter the number of release offset days for the configuration items. To minimize the impact of order changes, you can delay creating configuration items. You can create configuration items for only those sales orders where the estimated discrete job release date is within the number of days you specify.
4. If you chose not to enter an order number, enter the organization in which you want to autocode configuration items.
5. Indicate whether to compute the standard lead time for each new configuration item by actually scheduling a test WIP job to be completed on the requirement date. If this is disabled, (the default), the configuration item lead time value is derived from the value of the base model.
Final Assembly Order Completion

Oracle Work in Process lets you build final assembly orders the same way you build discrete jobs. You can automatically or manually convert reservations between the sales order and the job into reservations to inventory as you complete assemblies into inventory.

Build Final Assembly Orders

You can perform standard work in process transactions with your final assembly orders. You can issue material, return components back to inventory from the job and perform move and resource transactions by using the WIP Material Transactions, Move Transactions, and Resource Transactions windows.

Automatic Inventory Reservations

As you complete assemblies from final assembly orders, Work in Process automatically creates reservations from the job to the completion subinventory and locator and relieves the work in process reservation by the number of assemblies you complete.

For example, if you opened a discrete job to build 10 units of Laptop Computer–2001 (a configuration of Laptop Computer), you would establish a reservation between the sales order and the work in process job. If you then completed 4 units, Work in Process would automatically reserve the inventory you completed to the sales order and relieve the work in process reservation by 4.

If multiple sales orders were linked to the same work in process job and you did not manually specify which sales order you intended for a particular completion transaction, Work in Process would automatically choose the one with the earliest ship date.

Manual Inventory Reservations

You can also manually create reservations from the job to the subinventory and locator as you complete assemblies from final assembly orders. You can specify a sales order number, line and shipment to which Work in Process completes assemblies first before trying to allocate any remaining completions to other sales order number, lines, and shipments.
Complete Lot and Serial Number Controlled Assemblies

When you complete assemblies under serial number control from a final assembly order to inventory, you can choose to specify the serial number immediately or wait until you actually ship the sales order. You must specify the lot number at completion time when you complete assemblies under lot control from a final assembly order into inventory.
Pick Release and Ship Configuration Orders

Once you have built a configuration for a sales order and completed it to inventory, you are ready to pick release the sales order.

Automatic Pick Release

Order Entry automatically holds pick release for all order lines that require shipment of items you are manufacturing on work in process jobs linked to that sales order. For example, Order Entry waits for work in process jobs to be completed any time you have a sales order for:

- **ATO Model**: Unique configuration you assemble using a work in process job for that sales order.
- **ATO Standard Product**: Standard ATO product that you assemble using a work in process job for each sales order.
- **PTO Model including ATO Standard Product**: Pick-to-order configuration where one or more options are assemble-to-order products that you assemble using a work in process job for each sales order.
- **PTO Model including ATO Model**: Pick-to-order model that includes one or more assemble-to-order models, each of which you assemble using a work in process job for each sales order.

If you have orders for several units of an ATO item or configuration, you can pick release as work in process completes partial quantities or wait until the entire quantity has been completed before releasing pick slips. You control this when you define your cycle action prerequisites for Pick Release. If you choose Manufacturing Release – Work Order Partially Completed, Pick Release releases any available completed quantity. When you choose Manufacturing Release – Work Order Completed, Pick Release does not attempt to pick the order line until work in process has completed the full quantity. If PTO options should ship proportionately with the ATO Models, then Ship Mode Complete must be set to Yes on the PTO Model.

Shipping Documents

Order Entry supplies standard pick slips and pack slips to manage customer shipments. All physical, shippable items appear on the pick slip. For example, if the order line is for an ATO model, the ATO
configured item is listed on the pick slip, rather than the ATO model and options.

If the Bills of Material Include on Shipping Documents attribute is set to Yes, the option class and options print on the Pack Slip. For example, for an ATO model, it may be more reasonable to print the order lines, ATO model and options on the Pack Slip, instead of or in addition to the ATO configured item.

See Also

Pick Slip Report, Oracle Order Entry User’s Guide
Deactivating Configuration Items

Bills of Material lets you automatically deactivate item numbers associated with completed configuration orders. You can also deactivate configuration items to remove them from item master reports and screens before you actually purge them from the database.

See: Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7

When you set up Inventory and Bills of Material, you can define an item status to identify completed configuration items. You can use this status to disable the configuration item from all Oracle Manufacturing functions. You would normally specify No for each of the following item attributes for inactive configuration items:

- BOM allowed
- Build in WIP
- Transactable
- Stockable

When defining bills of material parameters, specify the item status to use for completed configuration items. See: Defining Bills of Material Parameters: page 1 – 7

You can run the Deactivate Configuration Items concurrent program to automatically deactivate all configuration items that have no open sales orders or on-hand inventory, and whose most recent sales order shipped more than the number of days ago you specify. Each deactivated configuration item has its status updated.

To deactivate configuration items:

2. Select Report and select Deactivate Configuration Items.
3. Enter the organization for which you want to deactivate configuration items that were completed and shipped more than the number of days ago you specify.
4. Enter the shipped number of days ago. Configuration items completed and shipped more than this are deactivated. The default is 90.

Note: You can delete item information for completed configurations from the database, including the bills of material and routings.
The ability to delete configuration items is subject to the same deletion constraints that operate for other item types as well.

See Also

Deletion Constraints: page 5 – 7
Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations: page 5 – 2
This chapter tells you everything you need to know about manufacturing scheduling, including:

- Overview of Manufacturing Scheduling: page 7 – 2
- Detailed Scheduling: page 7 – 3
- Repetitive Line Scheduling: page 7 – 4
- Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting: page 7 – 5
- Required Lead Time Information: page 7 – 7
- Lead Time Offsetting Computations: page 7 – 8
Overview of Manufacturing Scheduling

Oracle Manufacturing schedules production orders and operation dates using three scheduling methods:

- detailed scheduling
- repetitive line scheduling
- dynamic lead time offsetting

Oracle Manufacturing Products and Scheduling

The following lists the Oracle Manufacturing products that schedule orders and operations, and indicates their scheduling method:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Scheduling Function</th>
<th>Scheduling Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Work in Process</td>
<td>Schedule Discrete Jobs</td>
<td>Detailed Scheduling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Work in Process</td>
<td>Schedule Repetitive Schedules</td>
<td>Repetitive Line Scheduling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Bills of Material</td>
<td>Compute Manufacturing Lead Times</td>
<td>Detailed Scheduling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP</td>
<td>Compute Planned Order Start Date</td>
<td>Dynamic Lead Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compute Planned Order Component Requirement Dates</td>
<td>Offsetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Capacity</td>
<td>Load Planned Order Resource Requirements</td>
<td>Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Inventory</td>
<td>Compute Requirement Dates for Assemble to Order Item</td>
<td>Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Components for ATP Checks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7–1 Manufacturing Scheduling
Detailed Scheduling

Detailed scheduling is based on detailed resource availability and usages and is the most precise scheduling method in Oracle Manufacturing. It takes into account minute to minute resource availability information as well as exact resource requirements from routings to schedule precise start and end dates and times for jobs and operations. Detailed scheduling is an infinite scheduling algorithm—so it does not take into account load from other discrete jobs. However, you can simulate the scheduling impact of the load by adding queue, move, and wait resources.

Job and Operation Scheduling

Oracle Work in Process schedules discrete jobs using detailed scheduling. Each resource required on a job is scheduled consecutively. Work in Process can either forward schedule, backward schedule, or both from an operation.

Work in Process schedules repetitive production using repetitive line scheduling, schedules each resource in sequence based upon the shift workday calendar, the amount of the resource required, and the number of assigned resources that can be simultaneously scheduled.

See Also


Overview of WIP Scheduling, *Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide*

Overview of Routings: page 4 – 2
Repetitive Line Scheduling

Repetitive line scheduling is based on production line attributes including start and stop times, line speed, line capacity, and lead time. Repetitive line scheduling uses your workday calendar and the line start and stop times rather than detailed resource shift availability.

Define Production Lines

Work in Process lets you define production lines and specify a start and stop time for each line. You must also specify the minimum and maximum hourly rate on each line, and specify whether a line’s lead time is fixed or routing based.

Repetitive Assembly

For lines with a lead time basis of Fixed, you must enter a fixed lead time. Oracle Manufacturing uses this fixed lead time for all repetitive assemblies assigned to the line. For lines with a lead time basis of Routing–based, you can automatically compute manufacturing lead time based upon a repetitive assembly’s routing.

Work in Process lets you specify the production line where you build each assembly and the line speed determines the production run rate to schedule that assembly on that line. If you have a fixed speed line, all assemblies should use the same line speed. For variable speed lines, you need to specify different speeds for each assembly. The line speed for any particular assembly cannot exceed the line’s maximum rate.

See Also

Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2
Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting

Dynamic lead time offsetting is based on order quantity, lead times, and the workday calendar. It is a faster scheduling method that quickly estimates the start date of an order, an operation, or a resource.

Dynamic lead time offsetting always computes a date that is a particular number of days from a specified date in the workday calendar. It accounts for changes in lead time based on order quantity, using the fixed and variable components of manufacturing lead time, as well as operation and resource offsets.

See Also

Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2

Uses of Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting

Oracle Manufacturing functions whose processing performance is most critical use dynamic lead time offsetting while other functions that schedule exact operation and resource start and end times use detailed scheduling.

For example, Master Scheduling/MRP generates MRP plans as quickly as possible, so it schedules planned order start dates using dynamic lead time offsetting. Work in Process, however, uses detailed scheduling to schedule jobs since it schedules resource usages in departments with exact start date, end dates and times, not scheduling a resource when one is not available.

Results from detailed scheduling and dynamic lead time offsetting may differ. The more resource availability exceptions and capacity modifications from the workday calendar you have, the more detailed scheduling results differ from dynamic lead time offsetting results. Assigning preprocessing lead time to manufactured items can also produce different results; detailed scheduling does not use lead times in its calculations while dynamic lead time offsetting does.

Material Requirement Dates

Master Scheduling/MRP computes component requirement dates for planned orders using the offset percentage for the operation where each component is used. Master Scheduling/MRP multiplies the operation offset percentage times the planned order lead time to get
offset days, and then finds the workday that is the number of days past the planned order start date.

**Resource Load by Department / Date for Planned Orders**

Oracle Capacity offsets resource requirement dates the same way that Master Scheduling/MRP offsets component requirement dates, except it uses resource offset percentages. Oracle Capacity computes resource offset days as the planned order lead time multiplied by the resource offset percentage. Oracle Capacity then finds the workday that is the number of days past the work order start date to find the resource start date and time.

**Component Requirement Dates for ATP Checks**

Oracle Inventory lets you check component available to promise (ATP) for assemble to order (ATO) and Pick to Order (PTO) items. Oracle Bills of Material allows you to specify the components of an ATO or PTO product that must be promised using ATP. When you check ATP for a product having such components, Inventory determines the requirement date for components by first computing the manufacturing lead time for that product using the dynamic lead time calculation and then finding the date that is the number of workdays before the requested ship date. Inventory assumes that all ATO product components are required at the beginning of the ATO job.

**See Also**

Material Requirements Planning, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide*

Overview of Capacity Planning, *Oracle Capacity User’s Guide*

Overview of On–hand and Availability, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*
Bills of Material lets you automatically compute item, bill of material and routing information required for dynamic lead time offsetting. You can also maintain lead time information manually.

**Manufactured Items**

Dynamic lead time offsetting uses the following lead time attributes for discretely manufactured items:

- fixed lead time
- variable lead time
- preprocessing lead time

Dynamic lead time offsetting uses the following lead time attributes for repetitively manufactured items:

- processing lead time
- fixed lead time

**Purchased Items**

Dynamic lead time offsetting uses the following lead time attributes:

- preprocessing time
- processing lead time
- post-processing lead time

**Routings**

When computing manufacturing lead times, operation and resource offsets are automatically assigned to a routing. For material and resource requirement planning, you can optionally include offsets when computing requirement dates.

**See Also**

Overview of Lead Time Management: page 8 – 2
Lead Time Offsetting Computations

Dynamic lead time offsetting offsets dates in two steps, computing total lead time and offsetting the date by total lead time. Total lead time contains both fixed lead time and the quantity–dependent portion of lead time. Preprocessing lead time is also included for discrete items.

To compute the total lead time for discrete items use the following equation:

\[
\text{preprocessing lead time} + \text{fixed lead time} + \\
\text{(order quantity } \times \text{ variable lead time)}
\]

Compute the total lead time for repetitive items using the following equation:

\[
\text{fixed lead time} + (\text{daily rate } \times \text{ processing lead time})
\]

Offset the date by total lead time using the following equation:

\[
\text{start date} = \text{requirement date} - \text{total lead time}
\]

Attention: Oracle Manufacturing offsets the requirement date by the total lead time using the workday calendar, accounting for any non–workdays. Before subtracting total lead time, Oracle Manufacturing determines the workday for the requirement date. After offsetting by total lead time, the calendar date is derived from the starting workday.

Example

Master Scheduling/MRP uses dynamic lead time offsetting to compute a planned order release date. Master Scheduling/MRP computes total lead time and then uses the workday calendar to calculate the planned order release date.

Suppose your MRP plan produced a requirement for 100 discretely manufactured assemblies on March 12 and the following information exists for that assembly:

- Requirement date = 12–MAR
- Fixed lead time = 2 days
- Variable lead time = .05 days (1 day per 20 units)
• Preprocessing lead time = 0 days
• Order quantity = 100

Master Scheduling/MRP first computes the total lead time as follows:

\[
\text{Total lead time} = 0 + 2 + (100 \times .05) \\
\text{Total lead time} = 7 \text{ days}
\]

Suppose your organization’s workday calendar has a workday pattern with five days on and two days off. Workdays 1 – 5 are March 1 – 5. Saturday and Sunday, March 6 and 7, are off. Workdays 6 – 10 are March 8 – 12.

Master Scheduling/MRP then calculates the planned order release date as follows:

\[
\text{Start date} = \text{requirement date} - \text{total lead time} \\
\text{Start date} = (12-\text{MAR}) - 7 \text{ days}
\]

Convert planned order requirement date to a workday (using your organization’s workday calendar).

\[
\text{Start date} = \text{Date ([Workday 10] - 7)}
\]

\[
\text{Start date} = \text{Date (3)}
\]

Finally, determine the start date.

\[
\text{Start date} = 03-\text{MAR} \text{ (planned order release date)}
\]

See Also

Overview of On-hand and Availability, Oracle Inventory User’s Guide
Material Requirements Planning, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide
This chapter tells you everything you need to know about manufacturing lead times, including:

- Overview of Manufacturing Lead Times: page 8 – 2
- Calculating Lead Times: page 8 – 17
Overview of Lead Time Management

Oracle Manufacturing uses dynamic (quantity dependent) lead times to plan material and resource requirements, and to determine material requirement dates for available to promise (ATP) calculations. When computing requirement dates, both the fixed and variable components of an item’s manufacturing lead time are used. When setting time fences for planning and available to promise calculations, an item’s cumulative lead times are used.

See Also

Overview of Manufacturing Scheduling: page 7 – 2
Material Requirements Planning, Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide

Computed vs. Assigned Lead Times

For manufactured items, you can automatically compute manufacturing and cumulative lead times for a specific item or a range of items. You can also maintain this information manually. You must manually assign all lead time information for purchased items.

**Note:** You can calculate manufacturing and cumulative lead times for manufacturing or engineering items.

Changing Lead Times

Updating the values assigned to your lead times may impact functions that use dynamic lead time offsetting—such as material and resource requirements planning. Updating cumulative lead times can also impact material plans and available to promise calculations if these lead times are used to set time fences.

See Also

Overview of Manufacturing Scheduling: page 7 – 2
Item Lead Time Attributes

For all scheduled time elements, which are less than the standard workday, the system will compute the lead time day by dividing the lead time element by 24. The standard workday is defined in the workday calendar. Oracle Manufacturing stores the following lead time information for each item:

**Fixed Lead Time**  The portion of manufacturing lead time that is independent of order quantity. You can enter this factor manually for an item, or compute it automatically for manufactured items.

**Variable Lead Time**  The portion of manufacturing lead time that is dependent on order quantity. You can enter this factor manually for an item, or compute it automatically for manufactured items.

**Preprocessing Lead Time**  A component of total lead time that represents the time required to release a purchase order or create a job from the time you learn of the requirement. You can manually enter preprocessing lead time for both manufactured and purchased items.

**Postprocessing Lead Time**  A component of total lead time that represents the time to make a purchased item available in inventory from the time you receive it. Manually enter postprocessing lead time for each purchased item. Postprocessing lead time for manufactured items is not recognized.

**Processing Lead Time**  The time required to procure or manufacture an item. You can compute processing lead time for a manufactured item, or manually assign a value. Processing lead time is computed as the time as total integer days required to manufacture 1 lead time lot size of an item. You must manually assign a processing lead time for purchased items.

Processing lead time does not include preprocessing and postprocessing lead times.

**Lead Time Lot Size**  The quantity you use to calculate manufacturing lead times. You can specify an item’s lead time lot size to be different from the standard lot size.

**Dynamic Lead Time Offsetting**  A scheduling method that quickly estimates the start date of an order, operation, or resource.
Dynamic lead time offsetting schedules using the organization workday calendar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Total Lead Time</strong></th>
<th>The fixed lead time plus the variable lead time multiplied by the order quantity. The planning process uses the total lead time for an item in its scheduling logic to calculate order start dates from order due dates.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cumulative Manufacturing Lead Time</strong></td>
<td>The total time required to make an item if you had all raw materials in stock but had to make all subassemblies level by level. Oracle Bills of Material automatically calculates this value, or you can manually assign a value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cumulative Total Lead Time</strong></td>
<td>The total time required to make an item if no inventory existed and you had to order all the raw materials and make all subassemblies level by level. Bills of Material automatically calculates this value, or you can manually assign a value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Manufacturing Lead Times

The following diagram describes the relationship between preprocessing, processing, and postprocessing lead times for manufactured items (assembly A and subassembly B) and purchased items (component C). This diagram also describes the cumulative manufacturing lead time and cumulative total lead time for a manufactured item (assembly A).

Figure 8–1

See Also

Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User’s Guide*

Manufacturing Lead Time Computations: page 8–6
Manufacturing Lead Time Computations

Bills of Material computes manufacturing lead times from item, routing and resource availability information. Item and routing information is updated as part of the computation.

Lead Time Lot Size

Processing lead time is computed as the time required to complete 1 lead time lot size of an item (the time required to complete the second scheduled job). Bills of Material determines an item’s lead time lot size from two item master fields: standard lot size and lead time lot size.

For items that you plan and cost by the same lot size, you can specify a value only for the standard lot size. Bills of Material then computes manufacturing lead time using the standard lot size quantity.

Note: If an item’s routing references another item’s routing as a common, set both items’ lead time lot size to the same value. If you do not specify a lead time lot size, ensure that both items’ standard lot sizes are equal.

For items that you plan with one lot size and cost with a different lot size, you can enter a lead time lot size. Bills of Material then calculates manufacturing lead time using this value (rather than the standard lot size). If an item does not have a value for the standard or lead time lot size, Bills of Material uses a quantity of one to compute manufacturing lead times.

Note: If you enter a lead time lot size for an item, consider the item’s planning lot size to accurately offset lead times. For planned items with a fixed order quantity, set the lead time lot size to the fixed order quantity. If a planned item has varying lot sizes, assign a lead time lot size that represents the typical lot size.

Routings

Oracle Manufacturing uses routing, operation, and resource information to compute fixed, variable, and processing lead times for manufactured items. Lead times are not calculated for purchased items even if they have a routing.

When computing manufacturing lead times, primary routings are automatically updated with lead time and offset percents. As with the item lead time attributes, you can also manually assign these values.
Lead Time Percent

Oracle Manufacturing stores the lead time percent for each routing operation as the percent of manufacturing (processing) lead time required for previous operations, calculated from the start of a job to the start of an operation.

For example, if an item’s manufacturing lead time is two days and the primary routing has two operations with the same duration (1 day), the first operation’s lead time percent is zero and the second operation’s lead time percent is 50%.

Offset Percent

Oracle Manufacturing stores the offset percent for each resource on a routing operation as the percent of manufacturing (processing) lead time required for previous operations, calculated from the start of the job to the start time of a resource at an operation.

For example, both operations in the previous example for lead time percent require one day (eight hours) to perform. If you have two different resources assigned to the second operation, and each resource requires four hours to complete their task, the offset percent is 50% for the first resource and 75% for the second resource.

Fixed and Variable Lead Times

You can automatically compute processing, fixed, and variable lead times for manufactured items, whether they are produced using discrete jobs or repetitive schedules.

A value of zero is assigned to the fixed, variable, and processing lead times of a manufactured item that does not have a routing and is not assigned to a production line.

Discrete Jobs Lead Times

Bills of Material computes manufacturing lead time by forward scheduling two jobs: the first job is scheduled for a quantity of zero and the second job is scheduled for a quantity equal to the item’s lead time lot size. The first job determines the fixed lead time and the second job determines the variable and processing lead times.

Using detailed scheduling, fixed and variable lead times are computed as the difference between the total time required for two scheduled jobs. In other words, Bills of Material plots total time required for a
work in process job as a function of order quantity for both order quantities and computes the slope of the line that the two points define.

Attention: Although Bills of Material uses detailed scheduling to compute lead times, all calendar days are considered workdays regardless of days off, workday exceptions, or shift exceptions.

Bills of Material uses the following formulas to compute fixed and variable lead times:

Schedule a job for zero quantity beginning on the system date and compute fixed lead time as follows:

completion date (of one item) − system date

Discrete Lead Times Calculation

Variable Lead Time = \[
\frac{Time \ Required \ (Job_2 - Job_1)}{Lead \ Time \ Lot \ Size}
\]
Schedule a job for the lead time lot size beginning on the system date and compute variable lead time (rate) as follows:

\[
\frac{[\text{completion date (of all items)} - \text{system date}] - \text{fixed lead time}}{\text{lead time lot size}}
\]

Repetitive Schedule Lead Times

A lead time lot size of 1 is always used to compute lead times for items produced on routing–based schedules.

The following terms apply to repetitive schedules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>A day is equal to the number of hours the production line is active. If the line is active from 8:00 to 16:00, the day is 8 hours long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production Rate</td>
<td>The number of assemblies built per line, per hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line Fixed Lead Time</td>
<td>The fixed lead time of the production line, that is, the amount of time for one assembly to travel down a production line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production Interval</td>
<td>The time between two assemblies on a production line. If the production rate (line speed) is 10 assemblies per hour, then the production interval is .1 hours or once every .0125 days, or (1/(10*8)), for a line that runs 8 hours per day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\frac{1}{(\text{production rate} \times \text{day})}
\]

The Calculate Manufacturing Lead Times program calls the scheduler twice, first using a quantity of 1, then using a quantity of 0. For each case, the scheduling lead time (expressed in days) is returned. This is the total time taken to build the assemblies. The program then converts the two values into the fixed lead time and the variable lead time item attributes, respectively.
Table 8 – 1 illustrates how scheduling lead times are calculated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assembly's Routing</th>
<th>Scheduling Basis</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Scheduling Lead Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No routing</td>
<td>routing</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>line fixed lead time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>line fixed lead time + production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly with item–based resources only</td>
<td>routing</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>fixed lead time – production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(fixed lead time – production interval) + production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>line fixed lead time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>line fixed lead time + production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assembly with item– and lot–based resources</td>
<td>routing</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>fixed lead time – production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>(fixed lead time – production interval) + production interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fixed</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>line fixed lead time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>line fixed lead time + production interval</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For fixed lead time lines, the fixed and variable lead times are not based on whether a routing exists. The fixed lead time is always the line fixed lead time, the amount of time for one assembly to travel down a production line. The variable lead time is always the production interval:

$$\text{variable lead time (repetitive schedule)} = \frac{1}{\text{production rate} \times \text{day}}$$
For a routing-based line, the fixed lead time is the time required to build one assembly; the fixed lead time includes the time for both item and lot-based resources.

Repetitive Lead Times Calculation

\[
\text{variable lead time} = \frac{1}{\text{production rate} \times \text{day}}
\]

\[
\text{fixed lead time} = \frac{1}{\text{production rate} \times \text{day}}
\]

Processing Lead Time

Bills of Material also computes the processing lead time as the time required to complete the second scheduled job (where the job starts on the system date):

\[
\text{completion date (of one item)} - \text{system date}
\]

Processing lead time is presented in whole days rounded to the next day.
Example

For example, if for item A, you had the following data:

- Lead time lot size = 10 units
- System date = 01–JAN
- End date for work in process job for 1 unit = 10–JAN
- End date for work in process job for 10 units = 13–JAN

Then:

\[
\text{fixed lead time} = \text{completion date (of one item)} - \text{system date}
\]
\[
= 10\text{–JAN} - 01\text{–JAN}
\]
\[
= 10 \text{ days}
\]

\[
\text{Variable lead time (rate)} = \frac{[\text{completion date} - \text{system date} - \text{fixed lead time}]}{\text{lead time lot size}}
\]
\[
= \frac{[13\text{–JAN} - 01\text{–JAN} - 10]}{10}
\]
\[
= \frac{13 - 10}{10}
\]
\[
= 0.3 \text{ days/unit}
\]

\[
\text{Processing lead time} = \text{completion date} - \text{system date}
\]
\[
= 13\text{–JAN} - 01\text{–JAN}
\]
\[
= 13 \text{ days}
\]

Offset Computations

The corresponding operation lead time percent for operations in the primary routing is updated automatically.
For example, if the routing operations for item A had the following start dates (on a job for 10 assemblies), Bills of Material would compute and update the following operation lead time percentages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Start Date and Time</th>
<th>End Date and Time</th>
<th>Time Required</th>
<th>Previous Op Time Required</th>
<th>Lead Time Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>01–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>02–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/10 = 0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>03–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>04–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/10 = 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>05–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>09–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4/10 = 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>09–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>10–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8/10 = 80%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8 – 2 Operation Lead Time Percent

Bills of Material also computes, for each operation resource in an item’s primary routing, the percent of total lead time required for previous resource operations in that routing.

For example, if your resource start and end times were as follows, Bills of Material would compute these resource offset percents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Res. Seq</th>
<th>Start Date and Time</th>
<th>End Date and Time</th>
<th>Time Required</th>
<th>Previous Res Time Required</th>
<th>Offset Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>01–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>01–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0/10 = 0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>02–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>02–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/10 = 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>03–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>04–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2/10 = 20%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8 – 3 Resource Offset Percent
Cumulative Lead Time Computations

Bills of Material computes cumulative manufacturing lead time and cumulative lead time by stepping through indented bill structures. Item information is updated as part of the both cumulative calculations.

Cumulative Manufacturing Lead Time

Bills of Material sets an item’s cumulative manufacturing lead time equal to its own manufacturing lead time plus the maximum value of the cumulative manufacturing lead time for any component, adjusted for operation offset. The operation offset is the lead time percent for the operation where the component is used times the item’s manufacturing lead time (based on one lead time lot size).

Purchasing items have no cumulative manufacturing lead time.

Bills of Material uses the following formula to compute cumulative manufacturing lead time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Op Seq</th>
<th>Res. Seq</th>
<th>Start Date and Time</th>
<th>End Date and Time</th>
<th>Time Required</th>
<th>Previous Res Time Required</th>
<th>Offset Percent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>05–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>06–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4/10 = 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>09–JAN – 00:00</td>
<td>10–JAN – 24:00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8/10 = 80%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8–3 Resource Offset Percent

See Also

Creating a Routing: page 4–8
Calculating Manufacturing Lead Times: page 8–17
Overview of Work in Process Scheduling, Oracle Work in Process User’s Guide
Manufacturing Lead Times

Cumulative Total Lead Time

Bills of Material sets an item’s cumulative total lead time to its own total lead time plus the maximum value of cumulative total lead time less operation offset for any component. Operation offset for a component is the lead time percent for the operation where the component is used times the item’s manufacturing lead time (based on one lead time lot size).

Bills of Material calculates cumulative total lead time using the following equation:

\[
\text{total lead time for item} + \text{Maximum } (\text{cumulative total lead time} - \text{offset days}) - \text{for any component}
\]

For example, suppose Item A is made up of B, C, and D. B, C, and D are used at operations 20, 30, and 40 respectively and the manufacturing (processing) lead time for A (for the lead time lot size) equals 10. The following table illustrates the component, offset days, and lead time percent for each component:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8 – 4 Cumulative Manufacturing Lead Time
Bills of Material calculates cumulative manufacturing lead time as follows:

\[
\text{manufacturing lead time for A} + \text{ Maximum } [(\text{cumulative manufacturing lead time} - \text{ offset days}) \text{ for component B, C, or D}]
\]

\[
\text{Cumulative manufacturing lead time} = 10 + 16 = 26 \text{ days}
\]

And, the following table illustrates the cumulative total lead times assigned to components B, C, and D:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Cum. Total Lead Time</th>
<th>Op Seq.</th>
<th>Lead Time Percent</th>
<th>Offset Days</th>
<th>Cum Total Lead Time – Offset Days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8–5 Cumulative Total Lead Time

Bills of Material calculates cumulative total lead time for A as follows:

\[
\text{total lead time for A} + \text{ Maximum } [(\text{cumulative total lead time} - \text{ offset days}) \text{ for component B, C, or D}]
\]

\[
\text{Cumulative total lead time} = 10 + 17 = 27 \text{ days}
\]
Calculating Lead Times

You can calculate manufacturing lead times for one item, a range of items, or a category of items. The calculation updates the lead time attributes of all manufacturing items that you include, regardless of whether you manually maintain an item’s lead times.

Lead Times By Item Category

You can limit the items included in the manufacturing lead time calculation by specifying an item range or item category range when you submit the manufacturing lead time program. Using item categories, you can segregate the manufactured items whose lead times you manually maintain from those items you include in the manufacturing lead time calculation. You can also limit the parent items included in the cumulative lead time calculations by using item categories.

Recomputing Lead Times

Changes to routing and resource usages can impact an item’s lead times. After each change you make to a routing (adjusting usages, adding operations, and so on), recalculate the manufacturing lead time for the item.

Prerequisites

- You must define a bill of material for the parent item and member items who’s lead time is to be calculated. See: Defining Bills of Material
- You must define a routing for each item that will be used in the lead time calculation. See: Defining a Routing
- You must define a lead time lot size for the parent item who’s lead time is to be calculated. See: Defining a Routing

To calculate lead times:

2. Select a Type:
   - Request: calculate or roll up lead times without a report.
   - Set: calculate lead times and produce either the Bills of Material Structure Report or the Routing Report.
3. If you selected Set in the previous step, select one of the following:
   
   * **Calculate Cumulative Lead Times Set GUI**: calculates cumulative lead times and produces the Bills of Material Structure Report.
   
   * **Calculate Manufacturing Lead Times Set GUI**: calculates manufacturing lead times and produces the Routing Report.
   
   If you selected Request in the previous step, select Calculate Manufacturing Lead Times.

   4. Indicate a range of items or a specific item.

   5. If you chose a specific item, enter the item.

   6. Optionally, enter a revision for the item.

   Enter the date and time to snapshot the bill or routing. All data effective as of this date and time are included in the calculation.

   7. If you chose to calculate lead times for a range of items, enter a beginning and ending range.

   8. If you chose to calculate lead times for a range of items, you may enter a category set to calculate the lead times of the items associated with this category set. The default is the category set you defined for your functional area.

   9. If you chose to enter a category set, enter a beginning and ending category.

**See Also**

Manufacturing Lead Time Computations: page 8 – 6


Routing Report: page 9 – 23

Creating a Bill of Material: page 2 – 10

**Rolling Up Cumulative Lead Times**

Changes to the indented bill of material and component lead times can impact a parent item’s cumulative lead times. After each change made to a bill (adding components, assigning to a different operation, and so on) or the item lead times, roll up the cumulative lead times.
To roll up cumulative lead times:

2. Select Request for the Type.
3. Select Rollup Cumulative Lead Times for the Name.
4. Indicate a range of items or a specific item.
5. If you chose a specific item, enter the item.
6. Optionally, enter a revision for the item.
7. Enter the date and time to explode the bill of material.
8. If you chose to roll up cumulative lead times for a range of items, enter a beginning and ending range.
9. If you chose to roll up cumulative lead times for a range of items, you may enter a category set to roll up the cumulative lead times of the items associated with this category set. The default is the category set you defined for your functional area.
10. If you chose to enter a category set, enter a beginning and ending category.

See Also

Manufacturing Lead Time Computations: page 8 – 6
This chapter describes Oracle Bills of Material reports. Each description includes a sample report, with a description of submission parameters.
**Bill of Material Comparison Report**

Use the Bill of Material Comparison Report to report the comparison between two manufacturing assemblies. You can compare primary bills, manufacturing and engineering bills, alternates, and different revisions. Based on your comparison criteria, if the assemblies have identical components, item sequences, operation sequences, yields, quantities, and implementations, one line is printed for each identical component. Otherwise, the report prints a separate line for each different component.

**Report Submission**

Use the Report Bill of Material Comparison window to submit this report.

**Report Parameters**

The parameters for the Bill of Material Comparison Report are identical to those you supply when comparing bills of material online.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Comparing Bills of Materials: page 2 – 30
Bill of Material Listing

Use the Bill of Material Listing to report manufacturing and engineering bills without any associated component or routing information.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Bill of Listing Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Items From/To

To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

Category Set

Enter a category set to report on. The default is the category set you defined for your functional area.

Categories From/To

To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending category.

Alternate Selection

Choose one of the following options:

- **All**: Report the bill of material information for the primary and alternate assemblies.
- **Primary**: Report the bill of material information for only the primary assembly.
- **Specific**: Report the bill of material information for the alternate assembly you specify.

Alternate

Enter a specific alternate to report.
**Common Organization**

Enter the organization where you define bills of material in your current organization reference. Bills of Material prints the bill information for each common bill of material.

**Common Bill**

Enter common bills that report bill of material information.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Bill of Material Loop Report

Use the Bill of Material Loop Report to check for loops in a bill of material. Bill loops occur when you assign an assembly as a component to itself somewhere in the multilevel structure. You must fix loops before you can run an accurate MRP, or define a discrete job or repetitive schedule for the assembly.

If no loop exists, No Data Found is printed on the report.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Bill of Material Loop Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Item Selection

Choose one of the following options:

Range
Check for loops in the bill of material structure for a range of items you specify.

Specific
Check for loops in the item you specify. Bills of Material displays this option as the default.

Item

Enter a top-level item (not a component of another item). Bills of Material checks for loops throughout the multilevel structure, starting with this level.

Alternate Selection

Choose one of the following options:

All
Verify the bill structure for both the primary and alternate assemblies.

Primary
Verify the bill structure for the primary assemblies only. Bills of Material displays this option as the default.

Specific
Verify the bill structure for a specific alternate only.
**Alternate**

Enter an alternate for the item. The bill structure for item associated with this alternate is checked.

**Revision**

Enter a revision for the item.

**Date**

Enter the date and time to explode the bill of material.

**Items From/To**

To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

**Category Set**

Enter a category set. The bill structure associated with this category set is checked. The default is the category set you defined for your functional area. You can enter a value in this field only if you entered Range in the Item Selection field.

**Category From/To**

To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending category.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Bill of Material Structure Report

Use the Bill of Material Structure Report to report the detail for all levels of an engineering or manufacturing bill of material. You can multiply the component usage by an explosion quantity to get an extended quantity.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Bill of Material Structure Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Item Selection

Choose one of the following options:

* **Range**
  Report the bill structure for the range of items you specify.

* **Specific**
  Report the bill structure for the specific item you specify.

Item

Enter a specific item to report its bill structure.

Alternate Selection

Choose one of the following options:

* **All**
  Report the bill structure for the primary and alternate assemblies.

* **Primary**
  Report the bill structure for only the primary assembly.

* **Specific**
  Report the bill structure for the alternate assembly you specify.

Alternate

Enter a specific alternate to report.
**Revision**
Enter a revision for the item. The bill structure associated with this revision is printed.

**Date**
Enter a revision date and time. If you entered a specific item and a revision, the date defaults to the highest date of the revision. The bill structure effective as of this date and time is printed.

**Items From/To**
To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

**Category Set**
Enter a category set. The bill structure information associated with this category set is reported. The category set you defined for your functional area is the default.

**Categories From/To**
To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending category.

**Levels to Explode**
Enter the number of levels to explode for the bill of material. The default is the value specified when bill of material parameters were defined.

**Implemented Only**
Indicate whether to report only implemented or all components used by assemblies as of the effective date.

**Display Option**
Choose one of the following options:

- **All**
  Report all past, current, and pending components associated with the bill.
**Current**  
Report all components effective as of the revision date.

**Future and current**  
Report all future and current components as of the revision date.

**Explosion Quantity**

Enter a quantity to explode. This quantity is used to calculate the requirements for the components of the parent item by multiplying this quantity by the component usage in the bill of material.

**Assembly Detail**

Indicate whether you want to print assembly detail associated with the bill.

**Order Entry Detail**

Indicate whether to print order entry detail for the components on the bill.

**Leadtime and Other Detail**

Indicate whether to print lead time details associated with the components on the bill.

**Reference Designators**

Indicate whether to print reference designators for the components on the bill.

**Substitute Components**

Indicate whether to print substitute components for the components on the bill.

**Order By**

Choose one of the following options:

- **Item Seq, Op Seq**  
  For each bill level, order the components by item sequence, then by operation sequence.
For each bill level, order the components by operation sequence, then by item sequence.

**Use Planning Percent**

Indicate whether you want to use the planning percent to calculate the component requirements of the present item. Component requirements are calculated by multiplying the component usage quantity by the explosion quantity, and then multiplying the component planning percent.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Bills of Material Parameters Report

Use the Bills of Material Parameters Report to report bill of material default parameters. You use these parameters to define modes of operation and default values for Bills of Material.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Bills of Material Parameters Report in the Name field.

See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Consolidated Bill of Material Report

Use the Consolidated Bill of Material Report to summarize component usage at all levels for a manufacturing bill of material.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Consolidated Bill of Material Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

**Item Selection**

Choose one of the following options:

- **Range**
  - Report the consolidated bill for the range of items you specify.

- **Specific**
  - Report the consolidated bill for the specific item you specify.

**Item**

Enter a specific item.

**Alternate Selection**

Choose one of the following options:

- **All**
  - Report the consolidated bill for the primary and alternate assemblies.

- **Primary**
  - Report the consolidated bill for only the primary assembly.

- **Specific**
  - Report the consolidated bill for the alternate assembly you specify.

**Alternate**

Enter a specific alternate to report.
Revision
Enter a revision for the item. The consolidated bill associated with this revision is printed.

Date
Enter a revision date and time. If you entered a specific item and a revision, the date defaults to the highest date of the revision. The consolidated bill effective as of this date and time is printed.

Items From/To
To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

Category Set
Enter a category set. Routings associated with this category set are reported. The default is the category set you defined for your functional area.

Categories From/To
To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending category.

Levels to Explode
Enter the number of levels to explode the bill of material. The default is derived from the value entered when bill of material parameters were defined.

Implemented Only
Indicate whether to report only implemented or all components used by assemblies as of the effective date.

Display Option
Choose one of the following options:

*All* Report all past, current, and pending components associated with the bill.
Report all components effective as of the revision date. Bills of Material displays this option as the default.

Report all future and current components as of the revision date.

**Explosion Quantity**

Enter a quantity to explode. This quantity is used to calculate the requirements for the components of the parent item by multiplying this quantity by the component usage in the bill of material.

**Assembly Detail**

Indicate whether you want to print assembly detail associated with the bill.

**Use Planning Percent**

Indicate whether you want to use the planning percent to calculate the component requirements of the present item. Component requirements are calculated by multiplying the component usage quantity by the explosion quantity, and then multiplying the component planning percent.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Delete Items Report

Use the Delete Items Report to report the delete history for items, components, bills of material, operations, and routings.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Delete Items Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Delete Group From/To
To restrict the report to a range of delete groups, select the beginning and ending delete group.

Item
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete items.

Bill of Material
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete bills of material.

Routing
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete routings.

Bill and Routing
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete bills and routings.

Item, Bill and Routing
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete items, bills, and routings.

Component
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete components.
**Operation**
Indicate whether to print delete groups that delete operations.

**Pending Status**
Indicate whether to print delete groups that have entities waiting to be checked or deleted.

**Check Ok Status**
Indicate whether to print delete groups that have entities that were successfully checked and are eligible to be deleted.

**Error Status**
Indicate whether to print delete groups that have entities that could not be checked or deleted because of an error.

**Deleted Status**
Indicate whether to print delete groups that you have successfully deleted entities from.

**See Also**
Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Department Classes Report

Use the Department Classes Report to report department classes and their member departments. You can use department classes to identify manufacturing cells and flexible machine centers.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Department Classes Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Department Class Detail

Indicate whether to print member departments associated with the department classes.

See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Department Report

Use the Department Report to report department resource and overhead information.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Department Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

**Overhead Details**
Indicate whether to print department overhead information.

**Resource Details**
Indicate whether to print department resource information.

**Department Class**
Enter a department class to print member departments.

**Departments From/To**
To restrict the report to a range of departments, select the beginning and ending department.

See Also

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Item Where Used Report

Use the Item Where Used Report to report the assemblies that use the inventory items you specify.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Item Where Used Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Report Option

Choose one of the following options:

- **Range**  Report the range of items you specify.
- **Specific**  Report the item you specify.

Specific Item

Enter an item to report where used information.

Items From/To

To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

Category Set

Enter a category set. Bills of Material reports item where used information associated with this category set. The default is the category set defined for your functional area.

Categories From/To

To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending category.

Levels to Implode

Enter the number of bill of material levels to implode. The default is 15.
**Implemented Only**

Indicate whether to report only implemented or all components used by assemblies as of the effective date.

**Display Option**

Choose one of the following options:

- **All**
  Report all past, current, and pending components associated with the bill. This option is only available if Levels to Implode is set to 1.

- **Current**
  Report all components effective as of the revision date.

- **Future and current**
  Report all future and current components as of the revision date. This option is only available if Levels to Implode is set to 1.

**Date**

Enter a revision date and time. Bills of Material uses the bill of material information associated with this date when determining item usage.

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Resource Report

Use the Resource Report to report resource cost and overhead information.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Resource Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

- **Resource Detail**
  Indicate whether to print resource cost and overhead information for the resource.

- **Resources From/To**
  To restrict the report to a range of resources, select the beginning and ending resources.

See Also

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Resource Where Used Report

Use the Resource Where Used Report to report the manufacturing routings that use the resources you specify.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Resource Where Used Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

Resource From/To

To restrict the report to a range of resources, select the beginning and ending resources.

Effective Date

Enter an effective date. Bills of Material uses the routing information associated with this date when determining resource usage.

See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Routing Report

Use the Routing Report for manufacturing routing information. A routing defines the steps for manufacturing an item. For each routing you define operations, the sequence in which to perform them, and the resources required at each operation.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Routing Report in the Name field.

Report Parameters

**Item Selection**

Choose one of the following options:

- **Range**: Report routings for the range of items you specify.
- **Specific**: Report routings for the specific item you specify. Bills of Material displays this option as the default.

**Item**

Enter a specific item to report routing information.

**Alternate Selection**

Choose one of the following options:

- **All**: Report routing information for the primary and alternate routings. Bills of Material displays this option as the default.
- **Primary**: Report routing information only for the primary routing.
- **Specific**: Report routing information for the alternate routing you specify.

**Alternate**

Enter a specific alternate to report.
### Revision

Enter a routing revision for the item. The routing associated with this revision is printed.

### Date

Enter a revision date and time. Bills of Material prints the routing effective as of this date and time.

### Display Option

Choose one of the following options:
- **All**: Report all past, current, and future operations associated with the assembly.
- **Current**: Report all operations effective as of the revision date.
- **Future and current**: Report all future and current operations as of the revision date.

### Operation Detail

Indicate whether you want to print operation information associated with the routing.

### Items From/To

To restrict the report to a range of items, select the beginning and ending item numbers.

### Category Set

Enter a category set. Bills of Material reports routings associated with this category set. The default is the category set defined for your functional area.

### Categories From/To

To restrict the report to a range of categories, select the beginning and ending categories.
See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Standard Comments Report

Use the Standard Comments Report to report standard comments that you can assign to a bill of material.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Standard Comments Report in the Name field.

See Also

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents: page 2 – 20
Attaching Files to Bills and Routing Operations: page 2 – 21
Standard Instructions Report

Use the Standard Instructions Report to report standard instructions that you can assign when you define an operation or standard operation.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Standard Instructions Report in the Name field.

See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents: page 2 – 20
Attaching Files to Bills and Routing Operations: page 2 – 21
**Standard Operation Report**

Use the Standard Operation Report to report standard operations to use in assembly routings. Standard operations are default templates that you use, with little or no modification, in more than one routing. If you assign a standard operation as the operation code in a routing, the standard operation information is loaded into the routing. You can then modify the standard operation information in the routing.

**Report Submission**

In the Submit Requests window, select Standard Operation Report in the Name field.

**Report Parameters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Operation Detail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicate whether you want to print resource information associated with the standard operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Operations From/To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To restrict the report to a range of standard operations, select the beginning and ending standard operations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also**

Submitting a Request, *Oracle Applications User’s Guide*
Workday Exception Sets Report

Use the Workday Exception Sets Report to report exception sets. You can use workday exception sets to group workday changes for each organization. For example, you can define exception sets for holidays, schedule maintenance, or extended downtime.

You use exception sets in combination with your workday calendar, the days on/off pattern, and shift on/off pattern to generate a work pattern for your organization.

Report Submission

In the Submit Requests window, select Workday Exception Sets Report in the Name field.

See Also

Submitting a Request, Oracle Applications User’s Guide
This appendix shows you the default navigator path for each Bills of Material window. Refer to this appendix when you do not already know the navigator path for a window you want to use.
## Bills of Material Windows and Navigator Paths

For windows described in other manuals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>See...</th>
<th>Refer to this manual for a complete window description.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAP</td>
<td>Oracle Capacity User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CST</td>
<td>Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENG</td>
<td>Oracle Engineering User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flex</td>
<td>Oracle Applications Flexfields Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GL</td>
<td>Oracle General Ledger User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Oracle Human Resources User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>Oracle Purchasing User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRP</td>
<td>Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS</td>
<td>Oracle System Administrator’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td>Oracle Applications User’s Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although your system administrator may have customized your navigator, typical navigational paths include the following:

**Note:** Text in brackets ([ ] ) indicates a button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Window Name</th>
<th>Navigation Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add Range: page 2 – 18</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Designators] &gt; [Add Range]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternates: page 1 – 8</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Alternates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill Components Comparison: page 2 – 30</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill Details: page 2 – 16</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Bill Details]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill Documents: page 2 – 20</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills of Material: page 2 – 10</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bills of Material Responsibility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calculate Lead Times:</strong> page 8 – 17</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Lead Times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Calendar Dates:</strong> page 1 – 31</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Dates] or Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Shifts] &gt; [Dates]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change Types (See ENG):</strong></td>
<td>Setup &gt; Change Types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Component Changes:</strong> page 2 – 23</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Mass Changes &gt; [Changes]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delete Range:</strong> page 2 – 18</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Designators] &gt; [Delete Range]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deletion Constraints:</strong> page 1 – 9</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Delete Constraints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deletion Groups:</strong> page 5 – 2</td>
<td>Delete Groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department Classes:</strong> page 1 – 10</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Department Classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Departments:</strong> page 1 – 11</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Departments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Descriptive Elements:</strong> page 2 – 17</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Elements]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exceptions:</strong> page 1 – 30</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Dates] &gt; [Exceptions]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exception Templates:</strong> page 1 – 23</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Exception Templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Import Bills and Routings:</strong> page 1 – 33</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Import or Routings &gt; Import</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indented Bill of Material:</strong> page 2 – 27</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Indented Bills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Item Revisions:</strong> page 2 – 20</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Revision]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Item WhereUsed:</strong> page 2 – 32</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Item WhereUsed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Locations (See HR):</strong></td>
<td>Setup &gt; Locations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mass Change Bills:</strong> page 2 – 23</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Mass Changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operation Resources:</strong> page 1 – 14</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameters:</strong> page 1 – 7</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reference Designators:</strong> page 2 – 18</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Designators]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource Groups (See CAP):</strong></td>
<td>Setup &gt; Resource Groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resource WhereUsed:</strong> page 4 – 18</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Resource WhereUsed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Routing Details:</strong> page 4 – 8</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Routings &gt; [Routing Details]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Routing Documents:</strong> page 2 – 20</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Documents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Bills of Material Responsibility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Window Name</th>
<th>Navigation Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Routing Revisions: page 4 – 12</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Routings &gt; [Routing Revisions]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routings: page 4 – 8</td>
<td>Routings &gt; Routings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Assemble to Order Processes: page 6 – 45</td>
<td>Routings &gt; ATO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulation Sets (See CAP)</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Simulation Sets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifts: page 1 – 29</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Shifts]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift Times: page 1 – 29</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Shifts] &gt; [Times]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substitute Components: page 2 – 19</td>
<td>Bills &gt; Bills &gt; [Substitutes]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workday Calendar: page 1 – 25</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workday Patterns: page 1 – 28</td>
<td>Setup &gt; Calendars &gt; [Workday Pattern]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Flow Manufacturing Responsibility

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Window Name</th>
<th>Navigation Path</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mixed Model Map: page 3 – 18</td>
<td>Product Sync &gt; Mixed Model Map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Events: page 3 – 9</td>
<td>Product Sync &gt; Standard Events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routings: page 3 – 10</td>
<td>Product Sync &gt; Flow Routings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master Items (See INV)</td>
<td>Products and Parts &gt; Product Family or Products and Parts &gt; Master Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product Families: page 2 – 45</td>
<td>Products and Parts &gt; Product Family Members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allocations: page 2 – 47</td>
<td>Products and Parts &gt; Product Family Members &gt; [Allocations]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This appendix describes the options on the Bills of Material Special menu.
Bills of Material Special Menu

Depending upon the currently active window and other factors, the Special menu for Bills of Material includes:

**Roll Up Costs**  Navigates to the Cost Rollup window, where you can perform a cost rollup.

**Roll Up Lead Times**  Executes the Calculate Cumulative Lead Times program.

**Check for Loops**  Executes the Loop Check program that searches for loops in your bill. Bill loops occur when you assign a bill as a component to itself somewhere in the multilevel structure of the bill.

**Transfer Bill / Rtg**  Navigates to the Transfer Engineering Data window so that you can transfer engineering data to manufacturing.

**Copy Bill / Rtg From**  Navigates to the Copy Bill / Rtg From window where you can copy bills or routings.

**Assign Common Bill / Rtg**  Navigate to the Common Bill / Rtg window where you can reference a common bill or routing.

**Configure Bill**  Navigate to the Oracle Product Configurator window.

See Also

Rolling Up Assembly Costs, *Oracle Cost Management User’s Guide*

Rolling Up Cumulative Lead Times: page 8 – 18

Checking for Bill Loops: page 2 – 21

Transferring or Copying Engineering Items, Bills, and Routings, *Oracle Engineering User’s Guide*

Copying Bill and Routing Information: page 2 – 14

Referencing Common Bills and Routings: page 2 – 16
Glossary

activity A business action or task which uses a resource or incurs a cost.

alternate bill of material An alternate list of component items you can use to produce an assembly.

alternate routing An alternate manufacturing process you can use to produce an assembly.

assemble–to–order (ATO) An environment where you open a final assembly order to assemble items that customers order. Assemble–to–order is also an item attribute that you can apply to standard, model, and option class items.

assembly An item that has a bill of material. You can purchase or manufacture an assembly item. See also assemble–to–order, bill of material.

assigned units The number of resource units assigned to work at an operation in a routing. For example, if you have 10 units of machine resource available at a department, you can assign up to 10 of these units to an operation in a routing. The more units you assign, the less elapsed time Work in Process schedules for the operation.

autocharge A method of charging a discrete job or repetitive schedule for the resources consumed at an operation.

backflush operation A routing operation where you backflush component items.

base model The model item from which a configuration item was created.

bill of material A list of component items associated with a parent item and information about how each item relates to the parent item. Oracle Manufacturing supports standard, model, option class, and planning bills. The item information on a bill depends on the item type and bill type. The most common type of bill is a standard bill of material. A standard bill of material lists the components associated with a product or subassembly. It specifies the required quantity for each component plus other information to control work in process, material planning, and other Oracle Manufacturing functions. Also known as product structures.

bill revision A specific version of an item which specifies the components that are active for a date range.

BOM item type An item classification that determines the items you can use as components in a bill of material. BOM Item types include standard, model, option class, and planning items.

by–product Material produced as a residual of a production process. Represented by negative usage in the bill of material for an assembly.

calendar type The period pattern used to define a manufacturing calendar.

capacity modification Deviation to available resources for a specific department shift.
capacity units  The number of units of a resource available in a department. For example, the number of machines.

charge type  See autocharge

common bill of material  An assembly that uses the bill of material of another assembly as its bill. This enables you to reduce your maintenance effort by sharing the same bill structure among two or more assemblies. For example, if you have identical bills of material that produce the same product in two different organizations, you can define common bills of material for the identical structures.

custom routing  A routing that uses the routing of another assembly as its routing. This enables you to reduce your maintenance effort by sharing the same routing and operations for two or more assemblies.

component demand  Demand passed down from a parent assembly to a component.

component item  An item associated with a parent item on a bill of material.

component yield  The percent of the amount of a component you want to issue to build an assembly that actually becomes part of that assembly. Or, the amount of a component you require to build plus the amount of the component you lose or waste while building an assembly. For example, a yield factor of 0.90 means that only 90% of the usage quantity of the component on a bill actually becomes part of the finished assembly.

configuration  A product a customer orders by choosing a base model and a list of options. It can be shipped as individual pieces as a set (kit) or as an assembly (configuration item).

configuration bill of material  The bill of material for a configuration item.

configuration item  The item that corresponds to a base model and a specific list of options. Bills of Material creates a configuration item for assemble-to-order models.

configurator  A form that allows you to choose options available for a particular model, thus defining a particular configuration for the model.

configure-to-order  An environment where you enter customer orders by choosing a base model and then selecting options from a list of choices.

count point operation  A default operation to move to and from where you record move and charge resource transactions. Also known as pay point.

cumulative manufacturing lead time  The total time required to make an item if you had all raw materials in stock but had to make all subassemblies level by level. Bills of Material automatically calculates this value. Purchased items have no cumulative manufacturing lead time.

cumulative total lead time  The total time required to make an item if no inventory existed and you had to order all the raw materials and make all subassemblies level by level. Bills of Material automatically calculates this value.

days off  The number of consecutive days off a shift has before a day on.

days on  The number of consecutive days that a shift works before a day off.

delete entity  An item, bill of material or routing you choose to delete.

delete group  A set of items, bills, and routings you choose to delete.
**delete subentity**  A component or operation you choose to delete.

**deletion constraint**  A business rule that restricts the entities you can delete. A deletion constraint is a test that must succeed before an item, bill, or routing can be deleted.

**department**  An area within your organization that consists of one or more people, machines, or suppliers. You can also assign and update resources to a department.

**department class**  A group of departments.

**detailed scheduling**  A method of scheduling production that considers minute to minute resource availability information as well as exact resource requirements from routings.

**disable date**  A date when an Oracle Manufacturing function is no longer available for use. For example, this could be the date on which a bill of material component or routing operation is no longer active, or the date a forecast or master schedule is no longer valid.

**dynamic lead time offsetting**  A scheduling method that quickly estimates the start date of an order, operation, or resource. Dynamic lead time offsetting schedules using the organization workday calendar.

**effective date**  Date when an Oracle Manufacturing function is available for use. For example, this could be the date a bill of material component or routing operation becomes effective, or the date you anticipate revised item changes become part of a bill of material and can no longer be controlled by an ECO.

**elapsed time**  The clock time between start and completion. For example, if the build time of a resource is 10 hours, but you only schedule 5 hours of work a day, the elapsed time is 29 hours.

**engineer-to-order**  An environment where customers order unique configurations for which engineering must define and release custom bills for material and routings. Oracle Manufacturing does not provide special support for this environment beyond the support it provides for assemble-to-order manufacturing.

**engineering change order (ECO)**  A record of revisions to one or more items usually released by engineering.

**engineering item**  A prototype part, material, subassembly, assembly, or product you have not yet released to production. You can order, stock, and build engineering items.

**fixed lead time**  The portion of the time required to make an assembly independent of order quantity, such as time for setup or teardown.

**flow manufacturing**

**implementation date**  The date a component becomes part of a bill of material and is no longer controlled through an ECO. Implementation date does not necessarily equal the effective date.

**included item**  A standard mandatory component in a bill, indicating that it ships (if shippable) whenever its parent item is shipped. Included items are components of models, kits, and option classes.
**item**  Anything you make, purchase, or sell, including components, subassemblies, finished products, or supplies. Oracle Manufacturing also uses items to represent planning items that you can forecast, standard lines that you can include on invoices, and option classes you can use to group options in model and option class bills.

**item–based resource**  A resource whose usage quantity is the amount required per assembly unit you make.

**item sequence**  The sequence of the component item on the bill of material used to sort components on reports.

**kit**  An item that has a standard list of components (or included items) you ship when you process an order for that item. A kit is similar to a pick–to–order model because it has shippable components, but it has no options and you order it directly by its item number, not using the configuration selection screen.

**lead time lot size**  The item quantity used to compute the fixed and variable portions of manufacturing lead time. For manufactured items, the processing lead time represents the time required to build this quantity.

**lead time rollup**  A Bill of Material program that computes cumulative lead times for items.

**locator**  Physical area within a subinventory where you store material, such as a row, aisle, bin, or shelf.

**lot based resource**  A resource whose usage quantity is the amount required per job or schedule.

**make–to–order**  An environment where customers order unique configurations that must be manufactured using multiple discrete jobs and/or final assembly orders where the product from one discrete job is required as a component on another discrete job. Oracle Manufacturing does not provide special support for this environment beyond the support it provides for assemble–to–order manufacturing.

**mandatory component**  A component in a bill that is not optional. Bills of Material distinguishes required components from options in model and option class bills of material. Mandatory components in pick–to–order model bills are often referred to as included items, especially if they are shippable.

**manufacturing lead time**  The total time required to manufacture an assembly.

**mass change order**  A record of a plan to replace, delete, or update one or more component items in many bills of material at the same time.

**minimum transfer quantity**  The minimum number of assemblies to move from your current operation to the next. Work in Process warns you when you move less than the minimum transfer quantity.

**model bill of material**  A bill of material for a model item. A model bill lists option classes and options available when you place an order for the model item.

**model item**  An item whose bill of material lists options and option classes available when you place an order for the model item.
**multi-department resource**  A resource whose capacity can be shared with other departments.

**occurrence**  An individual quality result. For example, a measurement that falls in or out of a specified tolerance. Occurrences can be charted using Oracle Quality.

**offset percent**  An operation resource field that holds the percent of total manufacturing lead time required for previous operations. For example, if all operations require a total of ten hours to perform and the offset percent for a resource is 40%, then the resource is used four hours after the start of the first operation.

**operation**  A step in a manufacturing process where you perform work on, add value to, and consume department resources for an assembly.

**operation code**  A label that identifies a standard operation.

**operation instructions**  Directions that describe how to perform an operation.

**operation offset**  Elapsed days from the start of your first operation until the beginning of your current operation.

**operation sequence**  A number that orders operations in a routing relative to each other.

**option**  An optional item component in an option class or model bill of material.

**option class**  A group of related option items. An option class is orderable only within a model. An option class can also contain included items.

**option class bill of material**  A bill of material for an option class item that contains a list of related options.

**option class item**  An item whose bill of material contains a list of related options.

**option dependent operation**  An operation in a model or option class item’s routing that appears in a configuration item routing only if the configuration contains an option that references that operation.

**option item**  A non-mandatory item component in an option class or model bill of material.

**outside processing operation**  Any operation that has an outside processing resource. See **outside resource**

**outside processing item**  An item you include on a purchase order line to purchase supplier services as part of your assembly build process. This item can be the assembly itself or a non-stocked item which represents the service performed on the assembly.

**overhead**  The indirect expenses allocated in your budgeting process and assigned to your resources or departments. You charge overhead costs based on resource value, resource units, or operation completions. You typically include administration, facility, depreciation activity, and other costs you cannot directly charge to your manufactured items. Does not include material overhead.
**phantom assembly**  An assembly Work in Process explodes through when it creates the bill of material for a job or schedule. A particular assembly can be a phantom assembly on one bill and a subassembly on another.

**pick–to–order**  A configure–to–order environment where the options and included items in a model appear on pick slips and order pickers gather the options when they ship the order. Alternative to manufacturing the parent item on a work order and then shipping it. Pick–to–order is also an item attribute that you can apply to standard, model, and option class items.

**planning bill of material**  A bill of material for a planning item that contains a list of items and planning percentages. You can use a planning bill to facilitate master scheduling and/or material planning. The total output of a planning bill of material is not limited to 100% (it can exceed this number by any amount).

**planning item**  A type of item representing a product family or demand channel whose bill of material contains a list of items and planning percentages.

**planning percent**  A component usage percentage that facilitates planning for optional components on model and option class bills, and all components on planning bills.

**PO move resource**  An outside resource that is automatically charged upon receipt of a purchase order. PO move resources also automatically initiate shop floor move transactions upon receipt.

**PO receipt resource**  An outside resource that is automatically charged upon receipt of a purchase order.

**postprocessing lead time**  The time required to receive a purchased item into inventory from the initial supplier receipt, such as the time required to deliver an order from the receiving dock to its final destination.

**preprocessing lead time**  The time required to place a purchase order or create a discrete job or repetitive schedule that you must add to purchasing or manufacturing lead time to determine total lead time. If you define this time for a repetitive item, the planning process ignores it.

**primary bill of material**  A list of the components you most frequently use to build a product. The primary bill is the default bill for rolling up costs, defining a job, and calculating cumulative item lead times. Master Scheduling/MRP uses this bill to plan your material.

**primary routing**  A list of the operations you most frequently perform to build a product. The primary routing is the default routing for defining a job and calculating manufacturing lead times.

**processing lead time**  The time required to procure or manufacture an item. For manufactured assemblies, processing lead time equals the manufacturing lead time.

**reference designator**  An optional identifier you can assign to a component on a bill. For example, when the bill requires four of a component, you can assign four reference designators to that component, one for each usage.

**related item**  An acceptable substitute you define for an item so that you may receive the item if your supplier cannot ship the original item on the purchase order.
resource  Anything of value, except material and cash, required to manufacture, cost, and schedule products. Resources include people, tools, machines, labor purchased from a supplier, and physical space.

resource basis  The basis for resource usage quantity that indicates whether that quantity is required per item or per lot.

resource sequence  The number that indicates the order of a resource in an operation relative to other resources.

revision  A particular version of an item, bill of material, or routing.

routing  A sequence of manufacturing operations that you perform to manufacture an assembly. A routing consists of an item, a series of operations, an operation sequence, and operation effective dates.

routing revision  A specific version of a routing that specifies the operations that are active for a date range.

scheduled resource  A resource on a routing that is scheduled by Work in Process.

setup time  The time required to for a machine or work center to convert from the production of one item to another.

shift  A scheduled period of work for a department within an organization.

shrinkage rate  The percentage on a parent assembly expected to be scrapped in work in process.

simulation schedule  Unofficial schedules for personal use that contain the most current scheduled item information. You can print Simulation schedules, but you cannot confirm or send them via EDI.

simulation set  A group of capacity modifications for resource shifts to simulate, plan, or schedule capacity.

standard bill of material  A bill of material for a standard item, such as a manufactured product or assembly.

standard item  Any item that can have a bill or be a component on a bill except planning items, option classes, or models. Standard items include purchased items, subassemblies, and finished products.

standard operation  A commonly used operation you can define as a template for use in defining future routing operations.

standard rate  The frozen standard unit cost for a resource.

subinventory  Subdivision of an organization, representing either a physical area or a logical grouping of items, such as a storeroom or receiving dock.

substitute item  An item that can be used in place of a component. Master Scheduling/MRP suggests substitutes items on some reports.

supply  A quantity of materials available for use. Supply is replenished in response to demand or anticipated demand.

supply type  A bill of material component field that controls issue transactions from inventory to work in process. Supply types supported by Work in Process include: Push, Assembly pull, Operation pull, Bulk, Supplier, Phantom, and Based on bill.
teardown time  The time required to clean up or restore a machine or work center after operation.

total lead time  An item’s fixed lead time plus the variable lead time multiplied by the order quantity. For lead time calculations, Bills of Material sets the order quantity to the item’s standard or lead time lot size. The planning process uses the total lead time for an item in its scheduling logic to calculate order start dates from order due dates.

usage rate  The amount of a resource consumed at an operation.

variable lead time  The time required to produce one additional unit of an assembly. To compute an item’s total lead time multiply variable lead time by order quantity, and add an item’s fixed lead time.

workday calendar  A calendar that identifies available workdays for one or more organizations. Master Scheduling/MRP, Inventory, Work in Process, and Capacity plan and schedule activities based on a calendar’s available workdays.

workday exception set  An entity that defines mutually exclusive sets of workday exceptions. For each organization, you can specify a workday calendar and exception set.

workday exceptions  Dates that define plant or shift workday variations, including holidays, scheduled maintenance, or extended downtime.

yield  See component yield
Index

A
Absorption account, for costed resources, 1–17
Activity
  for resource charges, 4–14
  to group resources, 1–17
All organizations, importing bills and routings, 1–32
Alternate, 1–8
  for bills, 2–11
  for routings, 3–10, 4–9
  when deleting information, 5–3
Alternate bills of material, 2–5
Alternates window, Creating Alternates, 1–8
Archive, deleted entities, 5–3
Assemble–to–order
  ATP check, 6–13, 6–33
  autocreate configuration items, 6–36
  automatic inventory reservation, 6–47
  automatic pick release, 6–49
  build final assembly order, 6–47
  catalog configurations, 6–18
  completing lot and serial controlled assemblies, 6–48
  deactivate configuration item, 6–51
  forecast model demand, 6–21
  forecast option demand, 6–21
  manual inventory reservations, 6–47
  manually create final assembly order, 6–45
  master schedule models, 6–28
  model bill, 6–7, 6–14
  operation sequence inheritance, 6–17
  option class bill, 6–9
  option dependent routing steps, 6–15
  option quantity ranges, 6–11
  order processing cycle, 6–31
  planning bill, 6–6
  sales orders, 6–30
  shipping documents, 6–49
  standard bills, 6–10
  steps, 6–3
Assigned units, 4–14
Assigning a completion subinventory and locator, 4–11
Assigning Descriptive Elements, 2–17
Assigning Operation Resources, 4–13
Assigning Substitute Components, 2–19
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions, 1–29
Attaching Files, 2–21
Attachments, 2–20
Autocharge, 4–20
AutoCreating Configuration Items, 6–46
AutoCreating Final Assembly Orders, 6–46
Available 24 hours, resource, 1–13
Available–to–promise, check, 6–13, 6–33
B
Backflush, 4 – 17
Base model, 2 – 25
Basis, 2 – 40
Basis option class, 6 – 12
Basis type, 1 – 16, 4 – 13
Bill / component validation rules, 2 – 42
Bill components, 2 – 7
Bill Components Comparison window,
Comparing Bills of Material, 2 – 30
Bill Documents window, Defining Bill or
Routing Operation Documents, 2 – 20
Bill loops. See Checking for Bill Loops
Bill of material, operation sequence, 2 – 34
Bill of Material Comparison report, 9 – 2
Bill of Material Information report, 9 – 3
Bill of Material Loop report, 9 – 5
Bill of Material Structure report, 9 – 7
Bill of material types, 2 – 2
Bills of material
access control, 2 – 9
copying, 2 – 14
creating, 2 – 10
importing, 1 – 32
item sequence, 2 – 34
mass change, 2 – 23
profile options, 2 – 9
referencing, 2 – 16
Bills of Material Parameters report, 9 – 11
Bills of Material window
Attaching Files to Bills, Components, and
Routing Operations, 2 – 21
Checking for Bill Loops, 2 – 21
Referencing Common Bills and Routings,
2 – 17
Creating a Bill of Material, 2 – 10
Calculating Operation Yields, 3 – 22
Calendar Dates window
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions,
1 – 29
Reviewing the Workday Calendar, 1 – 31
Capacity Changes window, Assigning
Resources to a Department, 1 – 14
Catalog, configuration item, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
Category set, when calculating lead times,
8 – 18
Change order type, 2 – 24
Charge type, 1 – 16, 4 – 24
Check ATP, 2 – 39
Class, department, 1 – 10
Comparing bills of material, 2 – 30
Completion locator, 4 – 20
Completion subinventory, 4 – 20
Component
computing requirement dates for ATP, 7 – 6
to delete, 5 – 4
Component item, for bills, 2 – 11
Components, on bills of material, 2 – 7
Components window, Viewing Item Usage,
2 – 28
Components window, Deleting Items, Bills,
Routings, Components, and Operations,
5 – 4
Computing
component requirement dates for ATP, 7 – 6
dynamic lead time, 7 – 7
fixed lead time, 8 – 7, 8 – 12
manufacturing lead time, 8 – 2, 8 – 3, 8 – 6
MRP material requirement dates, 7 – 5
operation lead time percents, 8 – 12
resource load for planned orders, 7 – 6
variable lead time, 8 – 7, 8 – 12
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
Computing fixed lead time, 8 – 11
Computing variable lead time, 8 – 11
Configuration item
autocreate, 6 – 36
catalog, 6 – 18, 6 – 42
cost rollup, 6 – 41
creating single level bill for options, 6 – 38
lead time calculation, 6 – 41
linking existing item to sales order, 6 – 44
Calculating Operation Times, 3 – 14
Component
numbering method, 6 – 38
routings, 6 – 40
Consolidated Bill of Material report, 9 – 12
Constraints, when deleting bills and routings, 5 – 7
Copy options, for bills and routing operations, 2 – 15
Copy window
  Copying Bill and Routing Information, 2 – 15
  Copying Calendar and Shift Information, 1 – 27
Cost rollup, configuration item, 6 – 41
Cost type
  for overhead and resource associations, 1 – 18
  for resource overhead rate associations, 1 – 18
Costed resource, 1 – 17
Costing information, 2 – 27
Count point, 4 – 20
Cumulative
  lead time computations, 8 – 14
  manufacturing lead time, 8 – 14
  total lead time, 8 – 15
Cumulative lead times, rolling up, 8 – 18
Cumulative manufacturing lead time, calculation, 8 – 14, 8 – 16
Cumulative total lead time, calculation, 8 – 15

D
Dates
  effective from and effective date, 2 – 35
  effective to and inactive after, 2 – 35
  inactive on, 2 – 35
Deactivating Configuration Items, 6 – 51
Delete Component window, Deleting Components and Operations, 5 – 6
Delete entity, and deletion constraints, 1 – 9
Delete if, in deletion constraints, 1 – 10
Delete Items report, 9 – 15
Delete Operation window, Deleting Components and Operations, 5 – 6
Delete processed rows, importing bills and routings, 1 – 32
Deleting Components and Operations, 5 – 5
Deleting information, 5 – 2
Deletion constraint, 1 – 9
Deletion constraints, predefined, 5 – 7
Deletion Constraints window, Creating Custom Deletion Constraints, 1 – 9
Deletion group, 5 – 3
Deletion Groups window, Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations, 5 – 3
Department, 1 – 11, 1 – 12
  for standard operations, 4 – 16
Department Class report, 9 – 17
Department classes, 1 – 10
Department Classes window, Creating a Department Class, 1 – 10
Department report, 9 – 18
Departments window, Defining a Department, 1 – 11
Derived sales order demand, 6 – 22
Descriptive element, 2 – 17
Descriptive Elements window, Assigning Descriptive Elements, 2 – 17
Detailed scheduling, 7 – 3
Differences only, 2 – 30
Discrete job scheduling, 7 – 3
Display option, 2 – 27
Dynamic lead time offsetting, 7 – 5, 7 – 7

E
Effectivity dates. See Dates
Enable outside processing, 1 – 17
Exception template name, 1 – 24
Exception Templates window, Creating a Workday Exception Template, 1 – 23
Exceptions window, Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions, 1 – 30
Extended quantity, 2 – 37
calculation, 2 – 37

F
Failure message, deletion constraint, 1 – 10
Final assembly order
building, 6 – 47
manually creating, 6 – 45
Fixed lead time, calculation, 8 – 8
Flow Manufacturing
creating a Flow Routing, 3 – 10
defining Line Operations, 3 – 29
defining Standard Events, 3 – 9
defining Standard Processes, 3 – 8
definitions, 3 – 3
overview, 3 – 5
Flow manufacturing, 3 – 2
Folders
Bills Summary window, 2 – 10
Routings Summary window, 4 – 9

G
General ledger account. See Absorption account.
Group, 5 – 3

I
Implemented only, 2 – 27
Import bills of material, 1 – 32
Import Item Information window, Importing Bills and Routings, 1 – 32
Import routings, 1 – 32
Importing Bills and Routings, 1 – 32
Inactive status, 1 – 7
Include on ship docs, 2 – 40
Included in cost rollups, 2 – 12
Increment revision, 2 – 24
Indented Bills of Material window, Viewing an Indented Bill of Material, 2 – 27
Inventory reservations. See Reservation
Inverse rate or amount. See Usage rate or amount
Item
creating a bill, 2 – 11
for routings, 4 – 9
to delete, 5 – 3
Item revisions, 2 – 6
defining, 2 – 20
Item Revisions window, Defining Item Revisions, 2 – 20
Item selection, to calculate lead times, 8 – 18
Item sequence, on bills of material, 2 – 34
Item Where Used report, 9 – 19
Item Where Used window, Viewing Item Usage, 2 – 32

L
Lead time, 2 – 27
computing manufacturing, 8 – 2, 8 – 3, 8 – 6
computing operation percents, 8 – 12
configuration item, 6 – 41
cumulative manufacturing, 8 – 14
cumulative total, 8 – 15
dynamic offsetting, 7 – 5, 7 – 7
fixed, 8 – 7, 8 – 11, 8 – 12
processing, 8 – 3
variable, 8 – 7, 8 – 11, 8 – 12
Lead time percent, 3 – 11, 4 – 10
Location, department, 1 – 12
Locator. See Completion locator; Supply locator
Loops in bills of material. See Checking for Bill Loops

M
Manufacturing Lead Times, calculating, 8 – 17
Mass change bill of material, 2 – 23
Mass change order number, 2 – 24
Master schedule
model bill, 6 – 28
option class bill, 6–28
production relief, 6–28
shipment relief, 6–28
Material control, 2–27
Material requirement dates, 7–5
Maximum bill levels, 1–7
Maximum quantity, 2–39
Minimum quantity, 2–39
Minimum transfer quantity, 4–16
Mixed Model Map, 3–16
Calculations, 3–24
deleting a Saved Baseline, 3–21
entering Parameters, 3–16
generating, 3–18
querying a Saved Baseline, 3–20
saving a Baseline, 3–19
Model bills of material
defining, 6–7, 6–14
forecast demand, 6–21
master schedule, 6–28
MRP material requirement dates, 7–5
Mutually exclusive, 2–38

N
Numbering method, 1–7
Numbering segment, 1–7

O
Offset percent, 4–14
Operation
defining, 4–4
lead time percents, 8–12
outside processing, 4–7
scheduling, 7–3
Operation sequence, on bills of material, 2–34
Operation Documents window, Defining Bill or Routing Operation Documents, 2–20
Operation sequence inheritance, 6–17
Operation Times Calculations, 3–14
Operation Yields Calculations, 3–22
Operations window, Deleting Items, Bills, Routings, Components, and Operations, 5–4
Option class bills of material
defining, 6–9
forecast demand, 6–21
master schedule, 6–28
Option dependent, 4–16
Option dependent routing steps, 6–15
Option quantity ranges, 6–11
Optional, 2–38
Order lead time, calculation, 6–36
Order processing cycle, 6–31
Organization, 2–17
when autocreating configuration items, 6–46
when copying a bill, 2–15
when deactivating configuration items, 6–51
Outside processing enabled, 1–17
Outside processing operation, 4–7
Overhead, to associate to resource, 1–19
Owning department, for borrowed resources, 1–13

P
Parameters window, Defining Bill of Material Parameters, 1–7
Perform lead time calculation, 6–46
Personal profile option, bill of material access, 2–9
Phantoms, 2–3
Pick Release, automatic, 6–49
Pick–to–order
ATP check, 6–13, 6–33
automatic pick release, 6–49
basis option class, 6–12
catalog configurations, 6–18
deactivate configuration item, 6–51
forecast model demand, 6–21
forecast option demand, 6–21
master schedule options, 6–28
Index – 6

model bill, 6 – 7, 6 – 14
option class bill, 6 – 9
option dependent routing steps, 6 – 15
order processing cycle, 6 – 31
planning bill, 6 – 6
sales orders, 6 – 30
shipping documents, 6 – 49
standard bills, 6 – 10
steps, 6 – 3
Plan, 2 – 26
Planned order release date, calculation, 7 – 9
Planning bills of material, 6 – 6
Planning percent, 2 – 37
Primary and alternate bills, 2 – 5
Primary bills of material, 2 – 5
Processes
  Autocreating Configuration Items and Final Assembly Orders, 6 – 46
  Calculating Manufacturing Lead Times, 8 – 17
  Deactivating Configuration Items, 6 – 51
  Importing Bills and Routings, 1 – 32
  Rolling Up Cumulative Lead Times, 8 – 18
Processing lead time, 8 – 3
calculation, 8 – 11
Product Families, 2 – 45
  assigning members, 2 – 46
  Setting Planning Percentages, 2 – 47
Production relief, 6 – 28
Profile options, 1 – 33
Purchase price variance account, 1 – 18

Q
Quantity
  for bill components, 2 – 11
  minimum and maximum, 2 – 39
  of substitute item, 2 – 20
Quantity related, 2 – 18
Quarterly types, of workday calendar, 1 – 25

R
Rate or amount. See Usage rate or amount
Receiving valuation account, 1 – 18
Reference designator, 2 – 19
Reference designators, creating, 2 – 18
Reference Designators window, Creating Reference Designators, 2 – 18
Referencing Common Bills and Routings, 2 – 16
Release offset days, 6 – 46
Repetitive assembly scheduling, 7 – 4
Repetitive scheduling, line, 7 – 4
Reports
  Bill of Material Comparison, 9 – 2
  Bill of Material Information, 9 – 3
  Bill of Material Loop, 9 – 5
  Bill of Material Structure, 9 – 7
  Bills of Material Parameters, 9 – 11
  Consolidated Bill of Material, 9 – 12
  Delete Items, 9 – 15
  Department, 9 – 18
  Department Class, 9 – 17
  Item Where Used, 9 – 19
  Resource, 9 – 21
  Resource Where Used, 9 – 22
  Routing, 9 – 23
  Standard Comments, 9 – 26
  Standard Instructions, 9 – 27
  Standard Operation, 9 – 28
  Workday Exception Sets, 9 – 29
Required for revenue, 2 – 40
Required to ship, 2 – 40
Reservations
  automatic, 6 – 47
  manual, 6 – 47
Resource, assigning to a department, 1 – 13
Resource name, 1 – 16
Resource type, 1 – 16
Resource Costs window, Defining a Resource, 1 – 18
Resource group, 1 – 13
Resource load for planned orders, 7 – 6
Resource name, 4 – 13
Resource Overhead Associations window,
  Defining a Resource, 1 – 18
Resource report, 9 – 21
Resource unit cost, 1 – 18
Resource usage, 4 – 5
Resource Where Used report, 9 – 22
Resources, collecting and assigning costs to, 1 – 17
Resources Where Used window, Viewing Resource Usage, 4 – 18
Resources window
Assigning Operation Resources, 4 – 13
Assigning Resources to a Department, 1 – 13
Defining a Resource, 1 – 15
Revision
item, 2 – 20
when creating a bill, 2 – 11
Revisions
item, 2 – 6
routing, 2 – 6
Rolling Up Costs, 4 – 15
Rolling Up Cumulative Lead Times, 8 – 18
Routing
configuration item, 6 – 40
operation sequence inheritance, 6 – 17
operations, 4 – 4
option dependent steps, 6 – 15
outside operations, 4 – 7
resource usage, 4 – 5
Routing Details window, Assigning a Completion Subinventory and Locator, 4 – 11
Routing report, 9 – 23
Routing revision, 3 – 10, 4 – 9
creating, 4 – 12
Routing revisions, 2 – 6
Routing Revisions window, Creating a Routing Revision, 4 – 12
Routings
copying, 2 – 14
importing. See Importing bills and routings referencing, 2 – 16
Routings window
Creating a Routing, 4 – 8
Referencing Common Bills and Routings, 2 – 17

S
Sales order demand, 6 – 22
Sales order number, 6 – 46
Sales orders
assemble–to–order, 6 – 30
linking to existing configuration item, 6 – 44
pick–to–order, 6 – 30
Schedule, when scheduling an operation, 4 – 23
Scheduling
detailed, 7 – 3
discrete jobs, 7 – 3
dynamic lead time, 7 – 5
operations, 7 – 3
operations based on resources, 4 – 5
repetitive assembly, 7 – 4
repetitive line, 7 – 4
creating a workday calendar, 1 – 20, 1 – 24
Sequence number, 4 – 13
Share, resources across departments, 1 – 13
Shift Calendar Dates window
Assigning Workday or Shift Exceptions, 1 – 29
Reviewing the Workday Calendar, 1 – 31
Shift number, when creating shifts, 1 – 29
Shift number, to assign to resource, 1 – 13
Shift times, start and stop, 1 – 29
Shifts window
Assigning Resources to a Department, 1 – 13
Creating Shifts and Shift Times, 1 – 29
Shipment relief, 6 – 28
Shippable, 2 – 40
Shipped number of days ago, 6 – 51
Shipping documents, 6 – 49
Simulation set, for capacity change, 1 – 14
Sort option, 2 – 27
Special menu, B – 2
Standard bills of material, 6 – 10
Standard comments, 2 – 20
Standard Comments report, 9 – 26
Standard instructions, 2 – 20
Index – 8

Standard Instructions report, 9 – 27
Standard operation code, 4 – 16
Standard Operation report, 9 – 28
Standard Operations window, Creating a
  Standard Operation, 4 – 16
Standard rate, 4 – 14
  for charging jobs and schedules, 1 – 17
Starting value, 2 – 19
Subinventory. See Completion subinventory;
  Supply subinventory
Substitute Components window, Assigning
  Substitute Components, 2 – 19
Substitute components, assigning, 2 – 19
Substitute item, 2 – 19
Supply locator, 2 – 38
Supply subinventory, 2 – 38

T
Total lead time for discrete items, calculation,
  7 – 8
Total lead time for repetitive items, calculation,
  7 – 8
Type of delete entity, 5 – 3

U
Update WIP, 2 – 24
Usage rate or amount, 4 – 13
Use up, 2 – 26
Use–up item, 2 – 26

V
Validation rules, bill and component, 2 – 42
Variable lead time, calculation, 8 – 8, 8 – 10
Variable lead time rate, calculation, 8 – 9
Variance account, for costed resources, 1 – 18
Viewing Resource Usage, 4 – 18

W
Workday calendar, building, 1 – 31
Workday Calendars window, Creating a
  Workday Calendar, 1 – 25
Workday Exception Sets report, 9 – 29
Workday Patterns window, Creating a
  Workday Pattern, 1 – 28

Y
Yield, 2 – 36
  calculation, 2 – 36
Reader’s Comment Form

Oracle Bills of Material User’s Guide
A57335–01

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this publication. Your input is an important part of the information we use for revision.

• Did you find any errors?
• Is the information clearly presented?
• Do you need more information? If so, where?
• Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
• What features did you like most about this manual? What did you like least about it?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the topic, chapter, and page number below:

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

Please send your comments to:

Oracle Applications Documentation Manager
Oracle Corporation
500 Oracle Parkway
Redwood Shores, CA 94065 USA
Phone: (415) 506–7000    Fax: (415) 506–7200

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, and telephone number below:

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

Thank you for helping us improve our documentation.